

# *COMBINATORICS*



**NOTES FOR MATH 408 AT UND**

*Joel Iiams*



# COMBINATORICS

BY

*Joel Iiams*

This book is dedicated to: Raymond E. Iiams and Richard Painter

My grandpa Ray Iiams taught me how to work. More importantly, he taught me that any job worth doing is worth doing well.

Professor Richard Painter pushed me into going to graduate school. Without his persistent pressure, I would never have enjoyed the life and career I've had.

There are many other people who I should thank. I have failed if you don't know who you are.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Table of Contents .....	iii
Preface .....	1
PART I: Counting and Graph Theory .....	2
Chapter One: Basic Counting .....	3
Section 1: Counting Principles.....	3
Section 2: Permutations and Combinations .....	4
Section 3: Combinatorial Arguments and the Binomial Theorem.....	5
Section 4: General Inclusion/Exclusion.....	7
Section 5: Novice Counting .....	8
Section 6: Occupancy Problems .....	12
Chapter 1 Exercises: .....	14
Chapter Two: Introduction to Graph Theory .....	19
Section 1: Graph Terminology.....	19
Section 2: Graph Isomorphism .....	21
Section 3: Paths .....	23
Section 4: Trees.....	26
Section 5: Graph Coloring .....	28
Chapter 2 exercises: .....	32
PART II: Advanced Counting .....	35
Section 1: Ordinary Generating Functions .....	36
Section 2: Applications to Counting .....	38
Section 3: Exponential Generating Functions.....	40
Section 4: Recurrence Relations .....	42
Section 5: The Method of Characteristic Roots .....	44
Section 6: The Method of Generating Functions .....	48
Chapter 3 Exercises.....	56
Chapter Summary/Key Takeaways.....	61
Chapter Four: Pólya Counting .....	62
Section 1: Equivalence Relations.....	63
Section 2: Permutation Groups .....	64
Section 3: Group Actions.....	67

Section 4: Colorings.....	70
Section 5: The Cycle Index and the Pattern Inventory .....	71
Chapter 4 Exercises.....	74
Chapter Summary/Key Takeaways.....	76
Part III: Designs and Codes .....	77
Chapter Five: Combinatorial Designs.....	77
Section 1: Finite Prime Fields.....	77
Section 2: General Finite Fields.....	82
Section 3: Latin Squares .....	87
Section 4: Introduction to Balanced Incomplete Block Designs .....	92
Section 5: Sufficient Conditions and Constructions for BIBDs .....	95
Section 6: Finite Plane Geometries.....	98
Chapter 5 Exercises.....	101
Chapter Summary/Key Takeaways.....	104
Chapter Six: Introductory Coding Theory .....	104
Section 1: The Model for a Binary Symmetric Channel.....	105
Section 2: Distance, Error Detection and Error Correction .....	106
Section 3: Linear Codes .....	108
Chapter 6 Exercises.....	111
Index .....	113
Bibliography .....	123
Acknowledgments.....	124
About the Author .....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>

## Preface

This text is designed for a one semester course in combinatorics at the advanced undergraduate and beginning graduate level. The course has two prerequisites:

MATH 208 – Discrete Mathematics and MATH 166 – Calculus II.

Textbooks for these courses are posted on the course Blackboard site.

There are three essential problems in combinatorics. These are the *existence problem*, the *counting problem*, and the *optimization problem*. This course deals primarily with the first two in reverse order.

The first two chapters are preparatory in nature. Chapter 1 deals with basic counting. Since MATH 208 is a prerequisite for this course, you should already have a pretty good grasp of this topic. This chapter will normally be covered at an accelerated rate.

Chapter 2 is a short introduction to graph theory - which serves as a nice tie-in between the counting problem, and the existence problem. Graph theory is also essential for the optimization problem. Not every instructor of MATH 208 covers graph theory beyond the basics of representing relations on a set via digraphs. This short chapter should level the playing field between those students who have seen more graph theory and those who have not.

Chapter 3 is devoted to intermediate counting techniques. Again, some of this material will be review for certain, but not all, students who have successfully completed MATH 208. The material on generating functions requires some ability to manipulate power series in a formal fashion. This explains why Calculus II is a prerequisite for this course.

Counting theory is crowned by the so-called Pólya Counting, which is the topic of Chapter 4. Pólya Counting requires some basic group theory. This is not the last topic where abstract algebra rears its head.

The terminal chapters are devoted to combinatorial designs and a short introduction to coding theory. The existence problem is the main question addressed here. The flavor of these notes is to approach the problems from an algebraic perspective. Thus, we will spend considerable effort investigating finite fields and finite geometries over finite fields.

My personal experience was that seeing these algebraic structures in action before taking abstract algebra was a huge advantage. I've also encountered quite a few students who took this course after completing abstract algebra. Prior experience with abstract algebra did not necessarily give them an advantage in this course, but they did tend to come away with a much-improved opinion of, and improved respect for, the field of abstract algebra.

## **PART I: Counting and Graph Theory**

The material in the first two chapters is predominantly at the sophomore level of difficulty. Much of it should have been covered in your prerequisite discrete math course (if you've had one). A pdf of the textbook for MATH 208 at UND can be found at

[Discrete Math Book](#) – you will need to scroll down to get to the pdf.

The other prerequisite course for this class is Calculus II. The textbook for MATH 166 at UND can be found at

[Calculus Texts at UND](#)

The first two chapters will be covered at an accelerated pace given that this course is at the advanced undergraduate/beginning graduate level.



## Chapter One: Basic Counting

We generally denote sets by capital English letters, and their elements as lowercase English letters. We denote the cardinality of a finite set,  $A$ , by  $|A|$ . A set with  $|A| = n$  is called an  $n$ -set. We denote an arbitrary universal set by  $\mathcal{U}$ , and the complement of a set (relative to  $\mathcal{U}$ ) by  $\bar{A}$ . Unless otherwise indicated, all sets mentioned in this chapter are finite sets.

### Section 1: Counting Principles

The basic principles of counting theory are the *multiplication principle*, the *principle of inclusion/exclusion*, the *addition principle*, and the *exclusion principle*.

The multiplication principle states that the cardinality of a Cartesian product is the product of the cardinalities. In the most basic form  $|A \times B| = |A| \cdot |B|$ . An argument for this runs that  $A \times B$  consists of all ordered pairs  $(a, b)$  where  $a \in A$  and  $b \in B$ . There are  $|A|$  choices for  $a$  and then  $|B|$  choices for  $b$ . A common rephrasing of the principle is that if a task can be decomposed into two sequential subtasks, where there are  $n_1$  ways to complete the first subtask, and then  $n_2$  ways to complete the second subtask, then altogether there are  $n_1 \cdot n_2$  ways to complete the task.

Notice the connection between the multiplication principle and the logical connective AND. Please realize that this naturally extends to general Cartesian products with finitely many terms.

Example: The number of binary strings of length 10 is  $2^{10}$  since it is  $|\{0,1\}|^{10}$ .

Example: The number of ternary strings of length  $n$  is  $3^n$  for  $n \geq 0$ .

Example: The number of functions from a  $k$ -set to an  $n$ -set is  $n^k$ .

Example: The number of strings of length  $k$  using  $n$  symbols with repetition allowed is  $n^k$ .

Example: The number of one-to-one (aka injective) functions from a  $k$ -set to an  $n$ -set is  $n \cdot (n-1) \cdot (n-2) \cdot \dots \cdot (n-(k-1))$ .

The basic principle of inclusion/exclusion states that  $|A \cup B| = |A| + |B| - |A \cap B|$ . So we include elements when either in  $A$ , or in  $B$ , but then have to exclude the elements in  $A \cap B$ , since they've been included twice each.

Example: How many students are there in a discrete math class if 15 students are computer science majors, 7 are math majors, and 3 are double majors in math and computer science?

Solution: Let  $A$  denote the subset of computer science majors in the class, and  $B$  denote the math majors. Then  $|A| = 15$ ,  $|B| = 7$  and  $|A \cap B| = 3 \neq 0$ . So, by the principle of inclusion/exclusion there are  $15 + 7 - 3 = 19$  students in the class.

The general principle of inclusion/exclusion will be discussed in a later section.

The addition principle is a special case of the principle of inclusion/exclusion. If  $A \cap B = \emptyset$ , then  $|A \cup B| = |A| + |B|$ . In general, the cardinality of a finite union of pairwise disjoint finite sets is the sum of their cardinalities. That is, if  $A_i \cap A_j = \emptyset$  for  $i \neq j$ , and  $|A_i| < \infty$  for all  $i$ , then

$$\left| \bigcup_{i=1}^n A_i \right| = \sum_{i=1}^n |A_i|$$

In turn, the exclusion principle is a special case of the addition principle. A set and its complement are always disjoint, so  $|A| + |\bar{A}| = |\mathcal{U}|$ , or equivalently  $|A| = |\mathcal{U}| - |\bar{A}|$ .

## Section 2: Permutations and Combinations

Given an  $n$  –set of objects, an  $r$  –string from the  $n$  –set is a sequence of length  $r$ . We take the convention that the string is identified with its output list. So, the string with  $a_1 = a, a_2 = b, a_3 = c$  and  $a_4 = b$  is denoted  $abcb$ .

The number of  $r$  –strings from a set of size  $n$  is  $n^r$  as we saw in the previous section. As a string we see that order matters. That is, the string  $abcd$  is not the same as the string  $bcad$ . Also, repetition is allowed, since for example  $aaa$  is a 3 –string from the set of lowercase English letters.

An  $r$  –permutation from an  $n$  –set is an ordered selection of  $r$  distinct objects from the  $n$  –set. We denote the number of  $r$  –permutations of an  $n$  –set by  $P(n, r)$ . By the multiplication principle  $P(n, r) = n(n-1) \cdot \dots \cdot (n-(r-1)) = n(n-1) \cdot \dots \cdot (n-r+1) = n!/(n-r)!$ .

The number  $P(n, r)$  is the same as the number of one-to-one functions from a set of size  $r$  to a set of size  $n$ .

An  $r$  –combination from an  $n$  –set is an unordered collection of  $r$  distinct elements from the  $n$  –set. In other words, an  $r$  –combination of an  $n$  –set is an  $r$  –subset. We denote the number of  $r$  –combinations from an  $n$  –set by  $C(n, r)$  or  $\binom{n}{r}$ .

**Theorem 1.1:**  $P(n, r) = r! C(n, r)$

Proof: For each  $r$  –combination from an  $n$  –set, there are  $r!$  ways for us to order the set without repetition. Each ordering gives rise to exactly one  $r$  –permutation from the  $n$  –set. Every  $r$  –permutation from the  $n$  –set arises in this fashion. ■

**Corollary 1.2:**  $\binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{r! (n-r)!}$

Since  $n - (n-r) = r$ , we also have

**Corollary 1.3:**  $\binom{n}{r} = \binom{n}{n-r}$ .

Example: Suppose we have a club with 20 members. If we want to select a committee of 5 members, then there are  $C(20,5)$  ways to do this since the order of people on the committee doesn't matter. However, if the club wants to elect a board of officers consisting of a president, vice president, secretary, treasurer, and sergeant-at-arms, then there are  $P(20,5)$  ways to do this. In each instance, repetition is not allowed. What makes the difference between these two cases is that the first is an unordered selection without repetition, whereas the second is an ordered selection without repetition.

### Section 3: Combinatorial Arguments and the Binomial Theorem

One of the most famous combinatorial arguments is attributed to Blaise Pascal. It therefore bears his name. The understanding we adopt is that any number of the form  $C(m, s)$ , where  $m$  and  $s$  are integers, is zero, if either  $s > m$ , or  $s < 0$  (or both).

**Theorem 1.4:** (Pascal's Identity) *Let  $n$  and  $k$  be nonnegative integers, then*

$$\binom{n+1}{k} = \binom{n}{k-1} + \binom{n}{k}.$$

Proof: Let  $S$  be a set with  $n + 1$  elements and let  $a \in S$ . Put  $T = S - \{a\}$ . So  $|T| = n$ . On the one hand  $S$  has  $\binom{n+1}{k}$  subsets of size  $k$ .

On the other hand,  $S$  has  $\binom{n}{k}$   $k$ -subsets which are subsets of the  $n$ -set  $T$  and  $\binom{n}{k-1}$   $k$ -subsets consisting of  $a$  together with a  $(k - 1)$ -subset of  $T$ . Since these two types of subsets are disjoint the result follows by the addition principle. ■

You may be more familiar with Pascal's Identity through Pascal's Triangle

				1					
				1		1			
			1		2		1		
		1		3		3		1	
	1		4		6		4		1
1		5		10		10		5	1
∴				∴		∴			∴

Figure 1.1: The first five rows of Pascal's Triangle

The border entries are always 1. Each inner entry of the triangle is the sum of the two entries diagonally above it.

A nice application of Pascal's Identity is in the proof of the following theorem. We first state one lemma, without proof.

**Lemma 1.5:** *When  $m$  is a nonnegative integer*

$$\binom{m}{0} = 1 = \binom{m}{m}.$$

**Theorem 1.6:** (The Binomial Theorem) *When  $n$  is a nonnegative integer and  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$*

$$(x + y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k}$$

Proof: We proceed by induction on  $n$ . When  $n = 0$  the result is clear. So, suppose that for some  $m \geq 0$  we have

$$(x + y)^m = \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} x^k y^{m-k}, \text{ for any } x, y \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Then  $(x + y)^{m+1} = (x + y)^m(x + y)$ , by recursive definition of integral exponents.

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left( \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} x^k y^{m-k} \right) (x + y), \text{ by inductive hypothesis.} \\ &= \left[ \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} x^{k+1} y^{m-k} \right] + \left[ \sum_{k=0}^m \binom{m}{k} x^k y^{m+1-k} \right], \text{ by distribution} \\ &= \binom{m}{m} x^{m+1} + \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \binom{m}{k} x^{k+1} y^{m-k} \right] + \left[ \sum_{k=1}^m \binom{m}{k} x^k y^{m+1-k} \right] + \binom{m}{0} y^{m+1} \\ &= \binom{m}{m} x^{m+1} + \left[ \sum_{l=1}^m \binom{m}{l-1} x^l y^{m-(l-1)} \right] + \left[ \sum_{k=1}^m \binom{m}{k} x^k y^{m+1-k} \right] + \binom{m}{0} y^{m+1} \\ &= \binom{m}{m} x^{m+1} + \left[ \sum_{l=1}^m \binom{m}{l-1} x^l y^{m+1-l} \right] + \left[ \sum_{k=1}^m \binom{m}{k} x^k y^{m+1-k} \right] + \binom{m}{0} y^{m+1} \\ &= \binom{m}{m} x^{m+1} + \left[ \sum_{k=1}^m \left\{ \binom{m}{k-1} + \binom{m}{k} \right\} x^k y^{m+1-k} \right] + \binom{m}{0} y^{m+1} \\ &= \binom{m+1}{m+1} x^{m+1} + \left[ \sum_{k=1}^m \binom{m+1}{k} x^k y^{m+1-k} \right] + \binom{m+1}{0} y^{m+1} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{m+1} \binom{m+1}{k} x^k y^{m+1-k}. \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

From the binomial theorem we can derive facts such as

**Theorem 1.7:** *A finite set with  $n$  elements has  $2^n$  subsets.*

Proof: By the addition principle the number of subsets of an  $n$ -set is

$$\binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{n} = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} 1^k 1^{n-k}.$$

By the binomial theorem this quantity is simply  $(1 + 1)^n = 2^n$ .  $\blacksquare$

## Section 4: General Inclusion/Exclusion

In general, when we are given  $n$  finite sets  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$  and we want to compute the cardinality of their generalized union we use the following theorem.

**Theorem 1.8:** (Inclusion/Exclusion) *Given finite sets  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$*

$$\left| \bigcup_{i=1}^n A_i \right| = \left[ \sum_{i=1}^n |A_i| \right] - \left[ \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} |A_i \cap A_j| \right] + \left[ \sum_{1 \leq i < j < k \leq n} |A_i \cap A_j \cap A_k| \right] + \dots + (-1)^{n-1} \left| \bigcap_{i=1}^n A_i \right|.$$

Proof: We draw this as a corollary of the next theorem. ■

Let  $\mathcal{U}$  be a finite universal set which contains the general union of  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$ . To compute the cardinality of the general intersection of complements of  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$  we use the general version of DeMorgan's laws and the principle of exclusion. That is

$$\left| \bigcap_{i=1}^n \bar{A}_i \right| = |\mathcal{U}| - \left| \overline{\bigcup_{i=1}^n A_i} \right| = |\mathcal{U}| - \left| \bigcup_{i=1}^n A_i \right|.$$

So equivalent to Theorem 1.8 is

**Theorem 1.9:** *Given finite sets  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$*

$$\left| \bigcap_{i=1}^n \bar{A}_i \right| = |\mathcal{U}| - \left[ \sum_{i=1}^n |A_i| \right] + \left[ \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} |A_i \cap A_j| \right] + \dots + (-1)^n \left| \bigcap_{i=1}^n A_i \right|.$$

Proof: Let  $x \in \mathcal{U}$ . Then two cases to consider are 1)  $x \notin A_i$  for all  $i$  and 2)  $x \in A_i$  for exactly  $p$  of the sets  $A_i$ , where  $1 \leq p \leq n$ .

In the first case,  $x$  is counted once on the left-hand side. It is also counted only once on the right-hand side in the  $|\mathcal{U}|$  term. It is not counted in any of the subsequent terms on the right-hand side.

In the second case,  $x$  is not counted on the left-hand side, since it is not in the general intersection of the complements. Denote the term  $|\mathcal{U}|$  as the 0th term,  $\sum_{i=1}^n |A_i|$  as the 1st term, etc. Since  $x$  is a member of exactly  $p$  of the sets  $A_1, \dots, A_n$ , it gets counted  $\binom{p}{m}$  times in the  $m$ th term. (Remember that  $\binom{m}{k} = 0$ , when  $k > m$ )

So, the total number of times  $x$  is counted on the right-hand side is

$$\binom{p}{0} - \binom{p}{1} + \binom{p}{2} - \dots + (-1)^p \binom{p}{p}.$$

All terms of the form  $\binom{p}{k}$ , where  $k > p$  do not contribute. By the binomial theorem

$$0 = (1 + (-1))^p = \binom{p}{0} - \binom{p}{1} + \binom{p}{2} - \dots + (-1)^p \binom{p}{p}.$$

So, the count is correct. ■

Example: How many students are in a calculus class if 14 are math majors, 22 are computer science majors, 15 are engineering majors, and 13 are chemistry majors, if 5 students are double majoring in math and computer science, 3 students are double majoring in chemistry and engineering, 10 are double majoring in computer science and engineering, 4 are double majoring in chemistry and computer science, none are double majoring in math and engineering and none are double majoring in math and chemistry, and no student has more than two majors?

Solution: Let  $A_1$  denote the math majors,  $A_2$  denote the computer science majors,  $A_3$  denote the engineering majors, and  $A_4$  the chemistry majors. Then the information given is

$$|A_1| = 14, |A_2| = 22, |A_3| = 15, |A_4| = 13, |A_1 \cap A_2| = 5, |A_1 \cap A_3| = 0, |A_1 \cap A_4| = 0,$$

$$|A_2 \cap A_3| = 10, |A_2 \cap A_4| = 4, |A_3 \cap A_4| = 3, |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3| = 0, |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_4| = 0,$$

$$|A_1 \cap A_3 \cap A_4| = 0, |A_2 \cap A_3 \cap A_4| = 0, |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3 \cap A_4| = 0.$$

So, by the general principle of inclusion/exclusion, the number of students in the class is  
 $14 + 22 + 15 + 13 - 5 - 10 - 4 - 3 = 32.$

Example: How many ternary strings (using 0's, 1's and 2's) of length 8 either start with a 1, end with two 0's or have 4th and 5th positions 12?

Solution: Let  $A_1$  denote the set of ternary strings of length 8 which start with a 1,  $A_2$  denote the set of ternary strings of length 8 which end with two 0's, and  $A_3$  denote the set of ternary strings of length 8 which have 4th and 5th positions 12. By the general principle of inclusion/exclusion our answer is

$$|A_1 \cup A_2 \cup A_3| = 3^7 + 3^6 + 3^6 - 3^5 - 3^5 - 3^4 + 3^3$$

## Section 5: Novice Counting

All of the counting exercises you've been asked to complete up to this point have not been realistic. In general, it won't be true that a counting problem fits neatly into a section. So, we need to work on the bigger picture.

When we start any counting exercise it is true that there is an underlying exercise at the basic level that we want to consider first. So, instead of answering the question immediately, we might first want to decide on what type of exercise we have. The three types of counting exercises that we've considered are distinguishable by the answers to two questions.

1. In forming the objects that we want to count, is repetition or replacement allowed?
2. In forming the objects that we want to count, does the order of selection matter?

These three scenarios are described in Table 1.2.

Order	Repetition	Type	Form
Yes	Yes	String	$n^r$
Yes	No	Permutation	$P(n, r)$
No	No	Combination	$C(n, r)$

Table 1.2 The three types of basic counting exercises

There are two problems to address. Firstly, the table above is incomplete. What about, for example, counting objects where repetition is allowed, but order doesn't matter. Second of all, there are connections among the types which make some solutions appear misleading. But, as a general rule of thumb, if we correctly identify the type of problem we are working on, then all we have to do is use the principles of addition, multiplication, inclusion/exclusion or exclusion to decompose our problem into subproblems. The solutions to the subproblems often have the same form as the underlying problem. The counting principles employed direct us in how the sub-solutions should be recombined to give the final answer.

As an example of the second problem, if we ask how many binary strings of length 10 contain exactly three 1's, then the underlying problem is an  $r$  –string problem. But in this case the answer is  $C(10,3)$ . Of course, this is really  $C(10,3)1^31^7$  from the binomial theorem. In this case the part of the answer which looks like  $n^r$  is suppressed since it's trivial. To see the difference we might ask how many ternary strings of length 10 contain exactly three 1's. Now the answer is  $C(10,3)1^32^7$ , since we choose the three positions for the 1's to go in, and then fill in each of the 7 remaining positions with a 0 or a 2.

To begin to address the first problem we introduce

The Donut Shop Problem: If you get to the donut shop before the cops get there, you will find that they have a nice variety of donuts. You might want to order several dozen. They will put your order in a box. You don't particularly care what order the donuts are put into the box. You do usually want more than one of several types. The number of ways for you to complete your order is therefore a counting problem where order doesn't matter, and repetition is allowed.

To answer the question of how many ways you can complete your order, we first recast the problem mathematically. From among  $n$  types of objects we want to select  $r$  objects. If  $x_i$  denotes the number of objects of the  $i$ th type selected, we have  $0 \leq x_i$ , (since we cannot choose a negative number of chocolate donuts), also  $x_i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , (since we cannot select fractional parts of donuts). So, the different ways to order are in one-to-one correspondence with the solutions in nonnegative integers to  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n = r$ .

Now, to compute the number of solutions in nonnegative integers to  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n = r$ , we model each solution as a string (possibly empty) of  $x_1$  1's followed by a +, then a string of  $x_2$  1's followed by a +, ... then a string of  $x_{n-1}$  1's followed by a +, then a string of  $x_n$  1's.

So, for example, if  $x_1 = 2, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 1, x_4 = 3$  is a solution to  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 6$  the binary string we get is 11++1+111. Thus, the total number of solutions in nonnegative integers to  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n = r$ , is the number of binary strings of length  $r + n - 1$  with exactly  $r$  1's. From the remark above, this is  $C(n + r - 1, r)$ .

The donut shop problem is not very realistic in two ways. For example, it is common that part of your order will be determined by other people. You might canvas the people in your office before you go to see if there is anything you can pick up for them. So, whereas you want to order  $r$  donuts, you might have been asked to pick up a certain number of various types.

The More Realistic Donut Shop Problem: Now suppose that we know that we want to select  $r$  donuts from among  $n$  types so that at least  $a_i$  ( $a_i \geq 0$ ) donuts of type  $i$  are selected. In terms of our equation, we have  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n = r$ , where  $a_i \leq x_i$ , and  $x_i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Set  $y_i = x_i - a_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , and  $a = a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n$ , so that  $0 \leq y_i, y_i \in \mathbb{Z}$  and

$$\sum_{i=1}^n y_i = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i - a_i = \left[ \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right] - \left[ \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \right] = r - a$$

So, the number of ways to complete our order is  $C(n + (r - a) - 1, r - a)$ .

Still, we qualified the donut shop problem by supposing that we arrived before the cops did.

The Real Donut Shop Problem: If we arrive at the donut shop after canvassing our friends, we want to select  $r$  donuts from among  $n$  types. The problem is that if the cops have been there, there are probably only a few donuts left of each type. This may place an upper limit on how often we can select a particular type.

Now we wish to count solutions to  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n = r$  with  $a_i \leq x_i \leq b_i, x_i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . We proceed by replacing  $r$  with  $s = r - a$ , where  $a$  is the sum of lower bounds. We also replace  $b_i$  with  $c_i = b_i - a_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . So, we want to find the number of solutions with  $0 \leq y_i \leq c_i, y_i \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $y_1 + y_2 + \cdots + y_n = s$ .

There are several ways to proceed. First, we choose inclusion/exclusion. Let  $\mathcal{U}$  be the set of all solutions in nonnegative integers to  $y_1 + y_2 + \cdots + y_n = s$ . Next let  $A_i$  denote those solutions in nonnegative integers to  $y_1 + y_2 + \cdots + y_n = s$  where  $c_i < y_i$ . Then we want to compute  $|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \cdots \cap \overline{A_n}|$ . This we can do via Theorem 1.9.

Example: Let us count the number of solutions to  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 34$  where  $0 \leq x_1 \leq 4$ ,  $0 \leq x_2 \leq 5$ ,  $0 \leq x_3 \leq 8$ , and  $0 \leq x_4 \leq 40$ .

Solution: As above we have  $c_1 = 4, c_2 = 5, c_3 = 8$ , and  $c_4 = 40$ .

Also  $A_i$  will denote the solutions in nonnegative integers to  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 34$ , with the conditions  $x_i > c_i, i = 1, 2, 3, 4$ . So  $|\mathcal{U}| = C(34 + 4 - 1, 34)$ .

Next realize that  $A_4 = \emptyset$ , so  $\overline{A_4} = \mathcal{U}$  and  $\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \cap \overline{A_4} = \overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3}$ .

Now to compute  $A_1$ , we must first rephrase  $x_1 > 4$  as a non-strict inequality, i.e.  $5 \leq x_1$ .

So  $|A_1| = C(29 + 4 - 1, 29)$ . Similarly,  $|A_2| = C(28 + 4 - 1, 28)$ , and

$|A_3| = C(25 + 4 - 1, 25)$ . Next, we have that  $A_1 \cap A_2$  is all solutions in nonnegative integers to  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 34$  with  $5 \leq x_1$  and  $6 \leq x_2$ . So  $|A_1 \cap A_2| = C(23 + 4 - 1, 23)$ . Also

$|A_1 \cap A_3| = C(20 + 4 - 1, 20)$  and  $|A_2 \cap A_3| = C(19 + 4 - 1, 19)$ . Finally,

$|A_1 \cap A_2 \cap A_3| = C(14 + 4 - 1, 14)$ . Thus, the final answer is



$$|\overline{A_1} \cap \overline{A_2} \cap \overline{A_3} \cap \overline{A_4}| = \binom{34+4-1}{34} - \binom{29+4-1}{29} - \binom{28+4-1}{28} - \binom{25+4-1}{25} \\ + \binom{23+4-1}{23} + \binom{20+4-1}{20} + \binom{19+4-1}{19} - \binom{14+4-1}{14}.$$

We can now solve general counting exercises where order is unimportant and repetition is restricted somewhere between no repetition, and full repetition.

To complete the picture, we should be able to also solve counting exercises where order is important and repetition is partial. This is somewhat easier. It suffices to consider the subcases in the next example.

Example: Let us take as initial problem the number of quaternary strings of length 15. There are  $4^{15}$  of these. Now if we ask how many contain exactly two 0's, the answer is  $C(15,2)3^{13}$ . If we ask how many contain exactly two 0's and four 1's, the answer is  $C(15,2)C(13,4)2^9$ . And if we ask how many contain exactly two 0's, four 1's and five 2's, the answer is  $C(15,2)C(13,4)C(9,5)C(4,4)$ .

So, in fact many types of counting are related by what we call the multinomial theorem.

**Theorem 1.10:** When  $r$  is a nonnegative integer and  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in \mathbb{R}$ , then

$$(x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n)^r = \sum_{\substack{e_1+e_2+\dots+e_n=r \\ 0 \leq e_i, e_i \in \mathbb{Z}}} \binom{r}{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n} x_1^{e_1} x_2^{e_2} \dots x_n^{e_n}$$

where  $\binom{r}{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n} = \frac{r!}{e_1! e_2! \dots e_n!}$ .

To recap, when we have a basic counting exercise, we should first ask whether order is important and then ask whether repetition is allowed. This will get us into the right ballpark as far as the form of the solution. We must use basic counting principles to decompose the exercise into sub-problems. We solve the sub-problems and put the pieces back together. Solutions to sub-problems usually take the same form as the underlying problem, though they may be related to it via the multinomial theorem. Table 1.3 synopsisizes six basic cases.

Order	Repetition	Form
Yes	Yes	$n^r$
Yes	No	$P(n, r)$
No	Yes	$C(r, r+n-1)$
No	No	$C(n, r)$
Yes	some	$C(r; k_1, k_2, \dots, k_n)$
No	some	$C(r, r+n-1), \text{ w/ I/E}$

Table 1.3 The six types of basic counting exercises

## Section 6: Occupancy Problems

The purpose of this ultimate section is to show that some basic counting exercises can be re-phrased as so-called occupancy problems. A consequence will be that we can easily introduce occupancy problems which are not amenable to the elementary tactics we have dealt with so far. It's in order to solve these types of problems that we will be generating more counting tactics in chapters 3 and 4.

The basic occupancy problem has us placing  $n$  objects into  $k$  containers/boxes. To classify the type of occupancy problem we have, we must answer three yes/no questions. There will therefore be  $8 = 2^3$  basic occupancy problems. The three questions are:

1. Are the objects distinguishable from one another?
2. Are the boxes distinguishable from one another?
3. Can a box remain unoccupied?

If the answer to all three questions is yes, then the number of ways to place the  $n$  objects into the  $k$  boxes is clearly the number of functions from an  $n$  -set to a  $k$  -set, which is  $k^n$ . If the  $i$ th object,  $x_i$ , is placed into the  $j$ th box,  $b_j$ , then the function for this has  $f(x_i) = b_j$  aka  $f(i) = j$ .

If, on the other hand, the answer to the first question is no, but the other two answers are yes, then we have the basic donut shoppe problem. So, the number of ways to distribute  $n$  identical objects among  $k$  distinguishable boxes is the number of solutions in nonnegative integers to the equation  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_k = n$ , where  $x_i$  is the number of objects placed in the  $i$ th box.

If we keep no as the answer to the first equation, yes as the answer to the second equation, but change the answer to the third question to no, then we have the more realistic donut shoppe problem. Now we need the number of solutions in positive integers to  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_k = n$ , or equivalently the number of solutions in nonnegative integers to  $y_1 + y_2 + \cdots + y_k = n - k$ . This is  $C((n - k) + k - 1, n - k) = C(n - 1, n - k) = C(n - 1, k - 1)$ .

At this point it might appear that there is nothing really new here. That every one of our occupancy problems can be solved by an elementary counting technique. However, if we define  $S(n, k)$  to be the number of ways to distribute  $n$  distinguishable objects into  $k$  indistinguishable boxes we will derive in chapter 3 that

$$S(n, k) = \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{i=0}^k (-1)^i \binom{k}{i} (k - i)^n.$$

Upon making this definition we can answer three more of our eight basic occupancy problems. This is summarized in Table 1.4.

The numbers  $S(n, k)$  are called the Stirling numbers of the second kind. Table 1.4 indicates their relative importance for counting solutions to occupancy problems.

Objects Distinguished	Boxes Distinguished	Empty boxes allowed	Number of ways to complete
Yes	Yes	Yes	$k^n$
Yes	Yes	No	$k! S(n, k)$
No	Yes	Yes	$C(k + n - 1, k)$
No	Yes	No	$C(n - 1, k - 1)$
Yes	No	Yes	$S(n, 1) + \cdots + S(n, k)$
Yes	No	No	$S(n, k)$

Table 1.4: Six of the eight occupancy problems

We close this section by pointing out that two occupancy problems remain.

A partition of a positive integer  $n$  is a collection of positive integers which sum to  $n$ .

Example: The partitions of 5 are  $\{5\}, \{4,1\}, \{3,2\}, \{3,1,1\}, \{2,2,1\}, \{2,1,1,1\}, \{1,1,1,1,1\}$ .

So, the number of ways to place  $n$  indistinguishable objects into  $k$  indistinguishable boxes if no box is empty is the number of partitions of  $n$  into exactly  $k$  parts. If we denote this by  $p_k(n)$ , then we see that  $p_2(5) = 2$ .

In general, we see that  $p_1(n) = p_n(n) = 1$  for all positive integers  $n$ . Also  $p_2(n) = \lfloor \frac{n-1}{2} \rfloor$ .

And, of course,  $p_k(n) = 0$  when  $k > n$ .

The final occupancy problem is to place  $n$  indistinguishable objects into  $k$  indistinguishable boxes if some boxes may be empty. The number of ways this can be done is

$$\sum_{i=1}^k p_i(n).$$

This is the number of partitions of  $n$  into  $k$  or fewer parts.

A complete discussion of the partitions of integers into parts can be found in chapter 4 of [1]. You may want to read [3] first. We will be covering parts of [3] in chapter 3 of this text.

## Chapter 1 Exercises:

1. How many nonnegative whole numbers less than 1 million contain the digit 2?
2. How many bit strings have length 3, 4 or 5?
3. How many whole numbers are there which have five digits, each being a number in  $\{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9\}$ , and either having all digits odd or having all digits even?
4. How many 5-letter words from the lowercase English alphabet either start with f or do not have the letter f?
5. In how many ways can we get a sum of 3 or a sum of 4 when two dice are rolled?
6. List all permutations of  $\{1,2,3\}$ . Repeat for  $\{1,2,3,4\}$ .
7. How many permutations of  $\{1,2,3,4,5\}$  begin with 5?
8. How many permutations of  $\{1,2,3, \dots, n\}$  begin with 1 and end with  $n$ ?
9. Find a)  $P(3,2)$ , b)  $P(5,3)$ , c)  $P(8,5)$ , d)  $P(1,3)$ .
10. Let  $A = \{0,1,2,3,4,5,6\}$ .
  - a) Find the number of strings of length 4 using elements of  $A$ .
  - b) Repeat part a), if no element of  $A$  can be used twice.
  - c) Repeat part a), if the first element of the string is 3.
  - d) Repeat part c), if no element of  $A$  can be used twice.
11. Enumerate the subsets of  $\{a, b, c, d\}$ .
12. If  $A$  is a 9 –set, how many non-empty subsets does  $A$  have?
13. If  $A$  is an 8 –set, how many subsets with more than 2 elements does  $A$  have?
14. Compute each number
  - a)  $C(6,3)$
  - b)  $C(7,4)$
  - c)  $C(n, 1)$
  - d)  $C(2,5)$
15. In how many ways can 8 blood samples be divided into 2 groups to be sent to different laboratories for testing, if there are four samples per group.
16. Repeat exercise 15, if the laboratories are not distinguishable.

17. A committee is to be chosen from a set of 8 women and 6 men. How many ways are there to form the committee if
- the committee has 5 people, 3 women and 2 men?
  - the committee has any size, but there are an equal number of men and women?
  - the committee has 7 people and there must be more men than women?

18. Prove that

$$\binom{n}{m} \binom{m}{k} = \binom{n}{k} \binom{n-k}{m-k}.$$

19. Give a combinatorial argument to prove Vandermonde's Identity

$$\binom{m+w}{k} = \binom{m}{0} \binom{w}{k} + \binom{m}{1} \binom{w}{k-1} + \cdots + \binom{m}{k} \binom{w}{0}.$$

20. Use induction on  $r$  to prove that for all nonnegative integers  $r$

$$\binom{n}{0} + \binom{n+1}{1} + \binom{n+2}{2} + \cdots + \binom{n+r}{r} = \binom{n+r+1}{r}.$$

21. Calculate the probability that when a fair 6 –sided die is tossed, the outcome is
- an odd number.
  - a number less than or equal to 2.
  - a number divisible by 3.

22. Calculate the probability that in 4 tosses of a fair coin, there are at most 3 heads.

23. Calculate the probability that a family with three children has
- exactly 2 boys.
  - at least 2 boys.
  - at least 1 boy and at least 1 girl.

24. What is the probability that a bit string of length 5, chosen at random, does not have two consecutive zeroes?

25. Suppose that a system with four independent components, each of which is equally likely to work or to not work. Suppose that the system works if and only if at least three components work. What is the probability that the system works?

26. In how many ways can we choose 8 bottles of soda if there are 5 brands to choose from?

27. Find all partitions of a) 4, b) 6, c) 7.

28. Find all partitions of 8 into four or fewer parts.

29. Compute a)  $S(n, 0)$ , b)  $S(n, 1)$ , c)  $S(n, 2)$ , d)  $S(n, n - 1)$ , e)  $S(n, n)$
30. Show by a combinatorial argument that  $S(n, k) = kS(n - 1, k) + S(n - 1, k - 1)$ .
31. How many solutions in nonnegative integers are there to  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 18$  which satisfy  $1 \leq x_i \leq 8$  for  $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$ ?
32. Expand a)  $(x + y)^5$ , b)  $(a + 2b)^3$ , c)  $(2u + 3v)^4$
33. Find the coefficient of  $x^{11}$  in the expansion of
  - a)  $(1 + x)^{15}$
  - b)  $(2 + x)^{13}$
  - c)  $(2x + 3y)^{11}$
34. What is the coefficient of  $x^{10}$  in the expansion of  $(1 + x)^{12}(1 + x)^4$ ?
35. What is the coefficient of  $a^3b^2c$  in the expansion of  $(a + b + c + 2)^8$ ?
36. How many solutions in nonnegative integers are there to  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 = 47$  which satisfy  $x_1 \leq 6$ ,  $x_2 \leq 8$ , and  $x_3 \leq 10$ ?
37. Find a closed form expression for each sum.
  - a)  $C(n, 0) + 2C(n, 1) + 4C(n, 2) + \cdots + 2^n C(n, n)$
  - b)  $C(n, 0) + 4C(n, 1) + 16C(n, 2) + \cdots + 4^n C(n, n)$ .
  - c)  $C(n, 0) + xC(n, 1) + x^2C(n, 2) + \cdots + x^n C(n, n)$ .
38. An octapeptide is a chain of 8 amino acids, each of which is one of 20 naturally occurring amino acids. How many octapeptides are there?
39. In an RNA chain of 15 bases, there are 4 A's, 6 U's, 4 G's, and 1 C. If the chain begins with AU and ends with UG, how many chains are there?
40. An ice cream parlor offers 29 different flavors. How many different triple cones are possible if each scoop on the cone has to be a different flavor?
41. A cigarette company surveys 100,000 people. Of these 40,000 are males, according to the company's report. Also 80,000 are smokers and 10,000 of those surveyed have cancer. However, of those surveyed, there are 1000 males with cancer, 2000 smokers with cancer, and 3000 male smokers. Finally there are 100 male smokers with cancer. How many female nonsmokers without cancer are there? Is there something wrong with the company's report?
42. One hundred water samples were tested for traces of three different types of chemicals, mercury, arsenic, and lead. Of the 100 samples 7 were found to have mercury, 5 to have arsenic, 4 to have lead, 3 to have mercury and arsenic, 3 to have arsenic and lead, 2 to have mercury and lead, and 1 to have mercury, arsenic, but no lead. How many samples had a trace of at least one of the three chemicals?

43. Of 100 cars tested at an inspection station, 9 had defective headlights, 8 defective brakes, 7 defective horns, 2 defective windshield wipers, 4 defective headlights and brakes, 3 defective headlights and horns, 2 defective headlights and windshield wipers, 1 defective horn and windshield wipers, 1 had defective headlights, brakes and horn, 1 had defective headlights, horn, and windshield wipers, and none had any other combination of defects. Find the number of cars which had at least one of the defects in question.
44. How many integers between 1 and 10,000 inclusive are divisible by none of 5, 7, and 11?
45. A multiple choice test contains 10 questions. There are four possible answers for each question.
  - a) How many ways can a student answer the questions if every question must be answered?
  - b) How many ways can a student answer the questions if questions can be left unanswered?
46. How many positive integers between 100 and 999 inclusive are divisible by 10 or 25?
47. How many strings of eight lowercase English letters are there
  - a) if the letters may be repeated?
  - b) if no letter may be repeated?
  - c) which start with the letter  $x$ , and letters may be repeated?
  - d) which contain the letter  $x$ , and the letters may be repeated?
  - e) which contain the letter  $x$ , if no letter can be repeated?
  - f) which contain at least one vowel ( $a, e, i, o$  or  $u$ ), if letters may be repeated?
  - g) which contain exactly two vowels, if letters may be repeated?
  - h) which contain at least one vowel, where letters may not be repeated?
48. How many bit strings of length 9 either begin "00", or end "1010"?
49. In how many different orders can six runners finish a race if no ties occur?
50. How many subsets with an odd number of elements does a set with 10 elements have?
51. How many bit strings of length 9 have
  - a) exactly three 1's?
  - b) at least three 1's?
  - c) at most three 1's?
  - d) more zeroes than ones?
52. How many bit strings of length ten contain at least three ones and at least three zeroes?
53. How many ways are there to seat six people around a circular table where seatings are considered to be equivalent if they can be obtained from each other by rotating the table?
54. Show that if  $n$  is a positive integer, then  $C(2n, 2) = 2C(n, 2) + n^2$ :
  - a) using a combinatorial argument.
  - b) by algebraic manipulation.

55. How many bit strings of length 15 start with the string 101, end with the string 1001 or have 3rd through 6 bits 1010?
56. How many positive integers between 1000 and 9999 inclusive are not divisible by any of 4, 10 and 25?
57. How many quaternary strings of length  $n$  are there (a quaternary string uses 0's, 1's, 2's, and 3's)?
58. How many solutions in integers are there to  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 = 54$ , which satisfy  $3 \leq x_1, 4 \leq x_2, 5 \leq x_3$ , and  $6 < x_4, x_5, x_6$ ?
59. How many strings of twelve lowercase English letters are there
- a) which start with the letter  $x$ , if letters may be repeated?
  - b) which contain the letter  $x$ , if letters can be repeated?
  - c) which contain the letters  $x$  and  $y$ , if letters can be repeated?
  - d) which contain at least one vowel, where letters may not be repeated?
60. How many bit strings of length 19 either begin ``00'', or have 4th, 5th and 6th digits ``101'', or end ``1010''?
61. How many pentary strings of length 15 consist of two 0's, four 1's, three 2's, five 3's and one 4?
62. How many ternary strings of length 9 have
- a) exactly three 1's?
  - b) at least three 1's?
  - c) at most three 1's?



## Chapter Two: Introduction to Graph Theory

In a discrete mathematics course you should already have had some experience representing set-theoretic objects as digraphs. In this chapter we introduce some ideas and uses of undirected graphs, those whose edges are not directed.

### Section 1: Graph Terminology

Loosely speaking, an undirected graph is a doodle, where we have a set of points (called vertices). Some of the points are connected by arcs (called edges). If our graph contains loops, we call it a pseudograph. If we allow multiple connections between vertices we have a multigraph.

Clearly, in order to understand pseudographs and multigraphs it will be necessary to understand the simplest case, where we do not have multiple edges, directed edges, or loops. Such an undirected graph is called a simple graph if we need to distinguish it from a pseudograph or a multigraph. Henceforth in this chapter, unless specified otherwise, graph means undirected, simple graph.

Formally a graph,  $G = (V, E)$  consists of a set of vertices  $V$  and a set  $E$  of edges, where any edge  $e \in E$  corresponds to an unordered pair of vertices  $\{u, v\}$ . We say that the edge  $e$  is incident with  $u$  and  $v$ . The vertices  $u$  and  $v$  are adjacent, when  $\{u, v\} \in E$  and we write  $u \sim v$ . Otherwise, the vertices  $u$  and  $v$  are not-adjacent written  $u \not\sim v$ . When  $u$  and  $v$  are adjacent they are called neighbors. All of our graphs will have finite vertex sets, and therefore finite edge sets.

Most often we won't want to deal with the set-theoretic version of a graph, we will want to work with a graphical representation, or a 0,1 –matrix representation. This presents a problem since there is possibly more than one way of representing the graph either way. We will deal with this problem formally in the next section.

To represent a graph graphically we draw a point for each vertex and use arcs to connect those points corresponding to adjacent vertices. To represent a graph as a 0,1 –matrix we can either use an adjacency matrix or an incidence matrix.

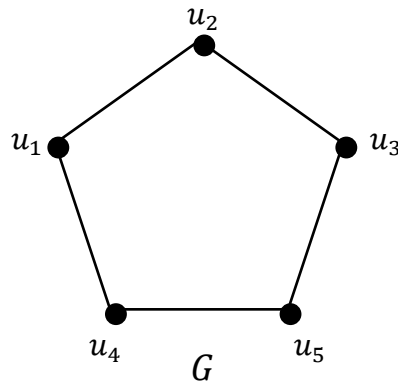
In the first case we use the vertex set in some order to label rows and columns (same order) of a  $|V| \times |V|$  matrix. The entry in the row labeled  $u$  and column labeled  $v$  is 1 if  $u \sim v$  and 0 in case  $u \not\sim v$ .

In the second case we use  $V$  to index the rows of a  $|V| \times |E|$  matrix, and  $E$  to index the columns. The entry in the row labeled  $u$  and column labeled  $e$  is 1 if  $u$  is incident with  $e$ , and 0 otherwise.

Example: Let  $G = (\{u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4, u_5\}, \{\{u_1, u_2\}, \{u_2, u_3\}, \{u_3, u_4\}, \{u_4, u_5\}, \{u_5, u_1\}\})$ . We represent  $G$  using an adjacency matrix  $A_G$  using an incidence matrix  $M_G$ , and graphically.

$$A_G = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ with vertices ordered } u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4, u_5.$$

$$M_G = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ with vertices ordered } u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4, u_5.$$



All of these represent the same object. While working in graph theory we usually think of the graphic representation of a graph.

Now that we know what graphs are, we are naturally interested in their behavior. For example, for a vertex  $v$  in a graph  $G = (V, E)$  we denote the number of edges incident with  $v$  as  $\deg v$ , the degree of  $v$ . For a digraph it would then make sense to define the in-degree of a vertex as the number of edges into  $v$ , and similarly the out-degree. These are denoted by  $\deg^+ v$  and  $\deg^- v$  respectively.

**Theorem 2.1:** (Hand-Shaking Theorem) *In any graph  $G = (V, E)$ ,*

$$\sum_{v \in V} \deg v = 2|E|.$$

Proof: Every edge is incident with two vertices (counting multiplicity for loops). ■

**Corollary 2.2:** *In an undirected graph there are an even number of vertices of odd degree.*

**Corollary 2.3:** *In a digraph  $D = (V, E)$ ,*

$$\sum_{v \in V} \deg^+ v = \sum_{v \in V} \deg^- v = |E|.$$

In order to explore the more general situations it is handy to have notation to describe certain special graphs. The reader is strongly encouraged to represent these graphically.

Complete Graphs: For  $n \geq 0$ ,  $K_n$  denotes the simple graph on  $n$  vertices where every pair of vertices is adjacent.  $K_0$  is of course the empty graph.

Cycles: For  $n \geq 3$ ,  $C_n$  denotes the simple graph on  $n$  vertices which when labelled  $v_1, \dots, v_n$  in some order, have the edge set is given by  $E = \{\{v_i, v_j\} \mid j - i \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{n}\}$ . The usual graphic presentation has the vertices at the corners of a regular  $n$ -gon.

Links: For  $n \geq 2$ ,  $L_n$  denotes the  $n$ -link. We set  $L_2 = K_2$ , and for  $n > 2$   $L_n$  is the result of removing any edge from  $C_n$ .

Wheels: For  $n \geq 3$ ,  $W_n$  denotes the  $n$ -wheel. To form  $W_n$  add one vertex to  $C_n$  and make it adjacent to every other vertex. Especially, when the added vertex (called the hub) is put in the center of the standard graphic presentation of  $C_n$ .

Cubes: For  $n \geq 0$ , the  $n$ -cube,  $Q_n$ , is the graph whose vertices are all binary strings of length  $n$ . Two vertices are adjacent only if they differ in exactly one position.

Bipartite graphs: A graph is bipartite if there is a partition  $V = V_1 \cup V_2$  (where these subsets are nonempty and disjoint) so that any edge is incident with one vertex from each part of the partition. When drawn graphically with one vertex set on the left and the other set on the right, the graph's vertices appear in two parts – hence the name.

In case every vertex of  $V_1$  is adjacent to every vertex of  $V_2$  and  $|V_1| = m$  with  $|V_2| = n$ , the result is the complete bipartite graph  $K_{m,n}$ .

As you might guess from the constructions of  $L_n$  and  $W_n$  from  $C_n$  it makes sense to discuss the union and intersection of graphs. For a simple graph on  $n$  vertices,  $G$ , it even makes sense to discuss the complement  $\bar{G}$  (relative to  $K_n$ ).

As far as subgraphs are concerned, we stress that a subgraph  $H = (W, F)$  of a graph  $G = (V, E)$ , has  $W \subseteq V, F \subseteq E$ , and if  $f = \{u, v\} \in F$ , then both  $u$  and  $v$  are in  $W$ .

Finally, we define the induced subgraph on a subset  $W$  of  $V$  to be the graph with vertex set  $W$ , and all edges  $f = \{u, v\} \in E$ , where  $u, v \in W$ .

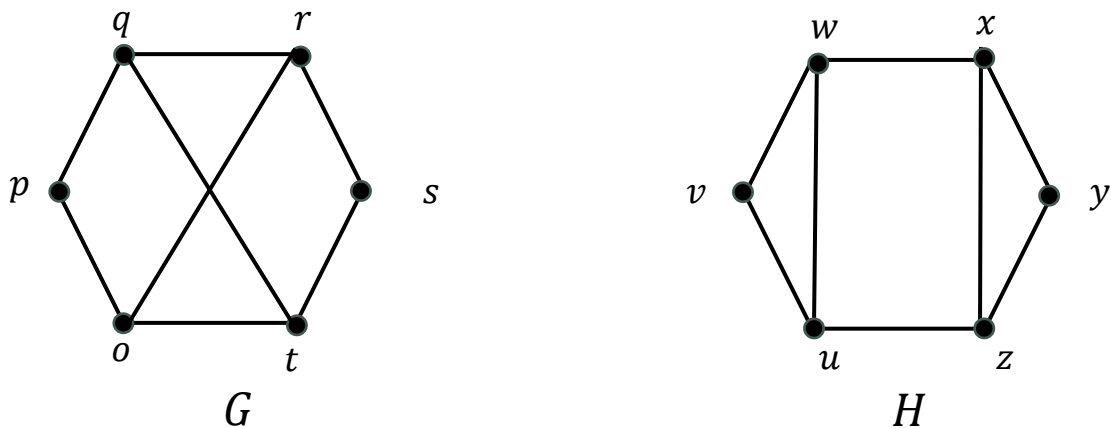
## Section 2: Graph Isomorphism

In this section we consider the problem that there is more than one way to present a graph. Informally, two graphs  $G = (V, E)$  and  $H = (W, F)$  are isomorphic, if one can be redrawn to be identical to the other. Thus, the two graphs would represent equivalent set-theoretic objects. Clearly it is necessary that  $|V| = |W|$  and  $|E| = |F|$ .

Formally, the graphs  $G = (V, E)$  and  $H = (W, F)$  are isomorphic if there exists a bijective function  $\varphi: V \rightarrow W$ , called a graph isomorphism, with the property that  $\{u, v\} \in E$  if and only if  $\{\varphi(u), \varphi(v)\} \in F$ . We write  $G \cong H$  in case such a function exists.  $G \not\cong H$  signifies that  $G$  and  $H$  are not isomorphic.

The added property that the map  $\varphi$  has in the definition is called the adjacency-preserving property. It is absolutely essential since for example  $L_4$  and  $K_{1,3}$  are both graphs with 4 vertices and 3 edges, yet they are not isomorphic. In fact, the adjacency-preserving property of a graph isomorphism guarantees that  $\deg u = \deg \varphi(u)$  for all  $u \in V$ . In particular, if  $G \cong H$  and the degrees of the vertices of  $G$  are listed in increasing order, then this list must be identical to the sequence formed when the degrees of the vertices of  $H$  are listed in increasing order. The list of degrees of a graph,  $G$ , in increasing order is its degree sequence, and is denoted  $ds(G)$ . Thus  $G \cong H$  implies  $ds(G) = ds(H)$ . Equivalently  $ds(G) \neq ds(H)$  implies  $G \not\cong H$ . However,  $ds(G) = ds(H)$  is not sufficient for  $G \cong H$  as the following example indicates.

Example: The graph  $H$  is bipartite, the graph  $G$  is not. Since  $H$  can be re-drawn as a two-part graph, and  $G$  cannot (you should check this). So,  $G$  cannot be isomorphic to  $H$ .

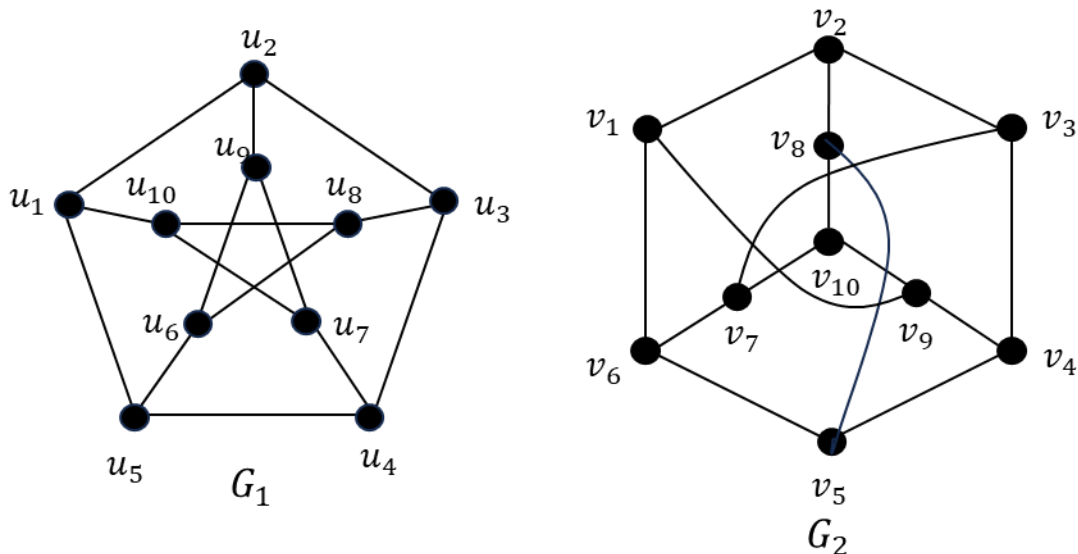


So given two graphs with identical degree sequences and a bijective function  $\varphi$  between their vertex sets which preserves degree, we must still show that  $\varphi$  preserves adjacency before we can conclude that the two graphs are isomorphic. This is most efficiently accomplished by representing  $G$  via an adjacency matrix  $A_G$  with respect to an ordering  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n$  of its vertex set, and comparing it to the representation of  $H$  via an adjacency matrix  $A_H^\varphi$  with respect to the ordering  $\varphi(v_1), \varphi(v_2), \dots, \varphi(v_n)$ . The map  $\varphi$  is a graph isomorphism if and only if  $A_G = A_H^\varphi$  if and only if  $A_G \oplus A_H^\varphi = 0_n$ .

Example: Let  $G$  be a 5-cycle on  $a, b, c, d, e$  drawn as a regular pentagon with vertices arranged clockwise, in order, at the corners. Let  $H$  have vertex set  $v, w, x, y, z$  and graphical presentation as a pentagram (five-pointed star), where the vertices of the graph are the ends of the points of the star, and are arranged clockwise, in order. Then  $\varphi = \{(a, v), (b, x), (c, z), (d, w), (e, y)\}$  is a graph isomorphism from  $G$  to  $H$ .

Example: The two graphs  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  are isomorphic under the map

$$\varphi = \{(u_1, v_1), (u_2, v_2), (u_3, v_3), (u_4, v_4), (u_5, v_9), (u_6, v_{10}), (u_7, v_5), (u_8, v_7), (u_9, v_8), (u_{10}, v_6)\}.$$

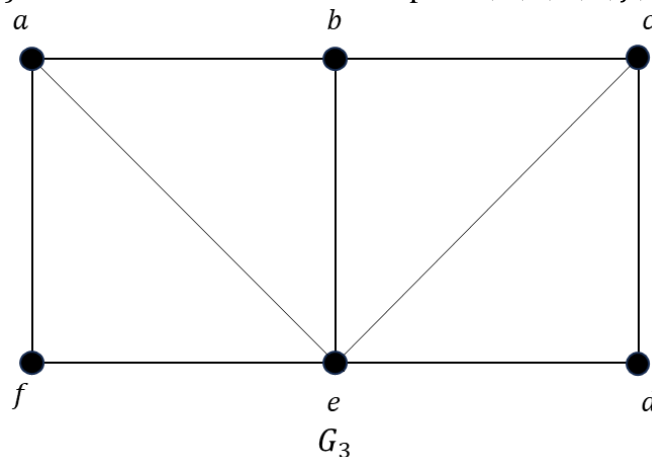


The graph  $G_1$  is the standard graphical presentation of what is called Petersen's Graph. Notice that it could be described as the graph whose vertex set is all 2 –sets of a 5 –set, where  $u \sim v$  if and only if  $|u \cap v| = 0$ .

### Section 3: Paths

A path of length  $n$  in a graph is an alternating sequence of vertices and edges of the form  $v_0, e_1, v_1, e_2, \dots, v_{n-1}, e_n, v_n$ , where  $e_i = \{v_{i-1}, v_i\}$ , for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . A path is simple if no edge is repeated. A circuit is a path with  $v_0 = v_n$ . A simple circuit is a cycle. In a digraph we require  $e_i = (v_{i-1}, v_i)$ , for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . In a simple graph we can and will suppress the edges and therefore consider any string of pairwise incident vertices as a path.

Example: In the graph  $G_3$  a path of length 6 is  $a, b, e, d, c, d, c$ . The sequence  $a, f, b, d, c, d, e, a$  is not a path, since neither of  $\{b, f\}$  or  $\{b, d\}$  is an edge. The path  $a, b, e, b, a$  is a circuit, but not a cycle since  $\{a, b\}$  and  $\{b, e\}$  are used more than once. The path  $a, b, c, d, e, f, a$  is a 6 –cycle.



A graph is connected if there is a path in the graph between any two vertices. As a matter of fact, one can prove the following theorem. You should do so as an exercise.

**Theorem 2.4:** *If  $G$  is an undirected, connected graph, then there is a simple path between any two vertices.*

In a graph the distance between two vertices is defined as the length of the shortest simple path between them. For example, in the graph  $G_3$  the distance from  $a$  to  $d$  is 2. When a graph is not connected, its maximal connected subgraphs are called components. If two vertices in a graph are in different components our convention is that their distance is  $\infty$ .

A vertex in a graph is a cutvertex if removal of the vertex and its incident edges results in a graph with more components. Similarly, a bridge is an edge whose removal yields a graph with more components.

We close this section with a discussion of two special types of paths. The path's descriptions are remarkably similar. The point of the discussion is that in discrete mathematics one can turn an easy problem into a hard one, just by changing a few words.

An Eulerian path in a graph is a simple path which uses every edge of the graph. An Eulerian cycle is an Eulerian path which is also a cycle. This type of path is interesting in that if a graph is Eulerian (has an Eulerian path or cycle) then it can be drawn completely without lifting one's writing utensil from the writing surface and without retracing any edges.

Example: The graph  $K_5$  is Eulerian, in fact it has an Eulerian cycle.

Example: The graph  $L_n$  is Eulerian, but does not have an Eulerian cycle.

Example: The graph  $K_4$  is not Eulerian. (Try it.)

A Hamiltonian path in a graph is a simple path which uses every vertex exactly once. A Hamiltonian cycle is one of the form  $v_0, v_1, \dots, v_n, v_0$ , where  $v_0, v_1, \dots, v_n$  is a Hamiltonian path.

Example:  $K_n$  is Hamiltonian for  $n \geq 0$ , and has a Hamiltonian cycle for  $n \geq 3$ .

Example:  $W_n$  has a Hamiltonian cycle for  $n \geq 3$ .

Example:  $L_n$  has a Hamiltonian path, but no Hamiltonian cycle for  $n \geq 2$ .

These two types of path are similar, in that there is a list of necessary conditions which a graph must satisfy, if it is to possess either type of cycle. If  $G$  is a graph with either an Eulerian or Hamiltonian cycle, then

1.  $G$  is connected.
2. Every vertex of  $G$  has degree at least 2.
3.  $G$  has no bridges.
4. If  $G$  has a Hamiltonian cycle, then  $G$  has no cutvertices.

These types of path are different in that Leonhard Euler completely solved the problem of which graphs are Eulerian. Moreover, the criterion is surprisingly simple. In contrast, no one has been able to find a similar solution for the problem of which graphs are Hamiltonian.

Spurred by the Sunday afternoon pastime of people in Kaliningrad, Russia Euler proved the following theorem.

**Theorem 2.5:** *A connected multigraph has an Eulerian cycle if and only if every vertex has even degree.*

Proof: Let  $G$  be a connected multigraph with an Eulerian cycle and suppose that  $v$  is a vertex in  $G$  with  $\deg(v) = 2m + 1$ , for some  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ . Let  $i$  denote the number of times the cycle passes through  $v$ . Since every edge is used exactly once in the cycle, and each time  $v$  is visited 2 different edges are used, we have  $2i = 2m + 1 \rightarrow \leftarrow$ .

Conversely, let  $G$  be a connected multigraph where every vertex has even degree. Select a vertex  $u$  and build a simple path  $P$  starting at  $u$ . Each time a vertex is reached we add any edge not already used. Any time a vertex  $v \neq u$  is reached its even degree guarantees a new edge out, since we used one edge to arrive there. Since  $G$  is finite, we must reach a vertex where  $P$  cannot continue. And this vertex must be  $u$  by the preceding remark. Therefore  $P$  is a cycle. If this cycle contains every edge we are done. Otherwise, when these edges are removed from  $G$  we obtain a set of connected components  $H_1, \dots, H_m$ . Each of these subgraphs satisfy the conditions of the theorem. Since their sizes are smaller, we may inductively construct an Eulerian cycle  $C_i$  for each  $H_i$ . Since  $G$  is connected each subgraph  $H_j$  contains a vertex, say  $v_j$  of the initial cycle. Now  $v_0, \dots, v_j, C_j, v_j, \dots, v_n, v_0$  is a cycle in  $G$ . Since the  $H_j$  are disjoint we can insert all of the  $C_i$ 's. This results in an Eulerian cycle for  $G$ . ■

**Corollary 2.6:** *A connected multigraph has an Eulerian path, but no Eulerian cycle if and only if it has exactly two vertices of odd degree.*

The following theorem is an example of a sufficient condition for a graph to have a Hamiltonian cycle. It is attributed to Gabriel Andrew Dirac. This condition is clearly not necessary by considering  $C_n$  for  $n \geq 5$ . Any cycle has all vertices of degree 2 which is less than  $n/2$  when  $n \geq 5$ .

**Theorem 2.7:** (Dirac) *Let  $G$  be a connected, simple graph on  $n \geq 3$  vertices. If  $\deg v \geq n/2$  for every vertex  $v$ , then  $G$  has a Hamiltonian cycle.*

Proof: Suppose that the theorem is false. Let  $G$  satisfy the conditions on vertex degree, connectivity, and simplicity. Moreover, suppose that of all counterexamples on  $n$  vertices,  $G$  is maximal with respect to the number of edges.  $G$  is not complete since  $K_n$  has a Hamiltonian cycle for all  $n \geq 3$ . Therefore  $G$  has two nonadjacent vertices  $v_1$  and  $v_n$ .

By maximality the graph  $G_1 = G \cup \{v_1, v_n\}$  has a Hamiltonian cycle. But also, this cycle uses the edge  $\{v_1, v_n\}$  else the cycle is in  $G$ . So, we may suppose that the Hamiltonian cycle in  $G_1$  is of the form  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n, v_1$ . Thus  $v_1, \dots, v_n$  is a Hamiltonian path in  $G$ .

But let  $k = \deg(v_1)$ , i.e.  $k = |S| = |\{v \in V | v \sim v_1\}|$ . If  $v_{i+1} \in S$ , then  $v_i \sim v_n$ , else  $v_1, \dots, v_i, v_n, v_{n-1}, \dots, v_{i+1}, v_1$  is a Hamiltonian cycle in  $G$ . (see the figure below)  
Therefore  $\deg(v_n) \leq n - 1 - k \leq n - 1 - \frac{n}{2} = \frac{n}{2} - 1 \rightarrow \leftarrow \blacksquare$

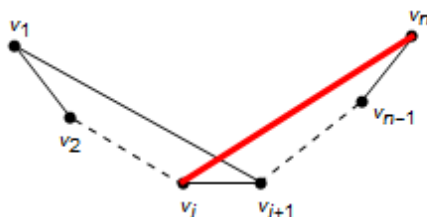


Figure 2.1: Dirac's Theorem graph

## Section 4: Trees

Trees are one of the most important classes of graphs. A tree is a connected, undirected graph, with no cycles. Consequently, a tree is a simple graph. Moreover, we have

**Theorem 2.8:** *A graph  $G$  is a tree if and only if there is a unique simple path between any two vertices.*

Proof: Suppose that  $G$  is a tree and let  $u$  and  $v$  be two vertices of  $G$ . Since  $G$  is connected, there is a simple path  $P$  of the form  $u = v_0, v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n = v$ . If  $Q$  is a different simple path from  $u$  to  $v$ , say  $u = w_0, w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n = v$  let  $i$  be the smallest subscript so that  $w_i = v_i$ , but so that  $v_{i+1} \neq w_{i+1}$ . Also, let  $j$  be the next smallest subscript where  $v_j = w_j$ . By construction the path  $v_i, v_{i+1}, \dots, v_j, w_{j-1}, w_{j-2}, \dots, w_i$  is a cycle in  $G$ . This contradicts  $G$  having no cycles.

Conversely, if  $G$  is a graph where there is a unique simple path between any pair of vertices, then by definition  $G$  is connected. If  $G$  contained a cycle,  $C$ , then any two vertices of  $C$  would be joined by two distinct simple paths. Therefore,  $G$  contains no cycles, and is a tree.  $\blacksquare$

A consequence of Theorem 2.8 is that given any vertex  $r$  in a tree, we can draw  $T$  with  $r$  at the top and the other vertices in levels below. The neighbors of  $r$  thus appear at the first level and are called  $r$ 's children. The neighbors of  $r$ 's children are put in the second level and are  $r$ 's grandchildren. In general, the  $i$ th level consists of those vertices in the tree which are at distance  $i$  from  $r$ . The result is called a rooted tree. A rooted tree is implicitly directed, but we suppress



the arrows on edges since every edge is drawn downwards. The height of a rooted tree is the maximum level number.

Naturally, besides child and parent, many genealogical terms apply to rooted trees, and are suggestive of the structure. For example, if  $T = (V, E, r)$  is a rooted tree with root  $r$ , and we let  $v \in V - \{r\}$ , the ancestors of  $v$  are all vertices on the path from  $r$  to  $v$ , including  $r$ , but excluding  $v$ . The descendants of a vertex  $w$  consist of all vertices which have  $w$  as one of their ancestors. The subtree rooted at  $w$  is the rooted tree consisting of  $w$ , its descendants, and all requisite paths. A vertex with no children is a leaf, and a vertex with at least one child is called an internal vertex.

To distinguish rooted trees by breadth, we use the term  $m$ -ary to mean that any internal vertex has at most  $m$  children. An  $m$ -ary tree is full if every internal vertex has exactly  $m$  children. When  $m = 2$ , we use the term binary.

As an initial application of rooted trees we prove the following theorem.

**Theorem 2.9:** *A tree on  $n$  vertices has  $n - 1$  edges.*

Proof: Let  $T = (V, E)$  be a tree with  $n$  vertices. Let  $u \in V$  and form the tree  $T = (V, E, u)$  rooted at  $u$ . Any edge  $e \in E$  joins two vertices  $v$  and  $w$  where  $v$  is the parent of  $w$ . This allows us to define a function  $f: E \rightarrow V - \{u\}$  by  $f(e) = w$ .  $f$  is one-to-one by uniqueness of simple path from  $u$  to  $w$ .  $f$  is onto by connectivity. Therefore  $|E| = |V - \{u\}| = |V| - 1 = n - 1$ . ■

We draw as corollary

**Corollary 2.10:** *A full  $m$ -ary tree with  $i$  internal vertices has  $n = mi + 1$  vertices.*

Since every vertex in a rooted tree is either internal or a leaf, we know that a full  $m$ -ary tree with  $i$  internal vertices has  $l = (m - 1)i + 1$  leaves. In short, if we know any two of the three quantities  $n, i$  and  $l$  for a full  $m$ -ary tree, we can deduce the third.

A very important application of full, rooted, binary trees is their use to model arithmetic and algebraic expressions. In this case the last operation performed acts as the root. Call this operation  $\star$ .  $\star$  is usually one of addition, subtraction, multiplication, or division. Since order of evaluation matters when we subtract or divide, we need to also order the tree distinguishing each pair of children as left child and right child. Our expression is then modeled as  $T_1 \star T_2$ , where  $T_1$  is the left child, and each of  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  may be constructed recursively.

Example: The expression  $((x + 2)^3) * (y - (3 + x)) - 5$  is modeled by the tree  $U$ .

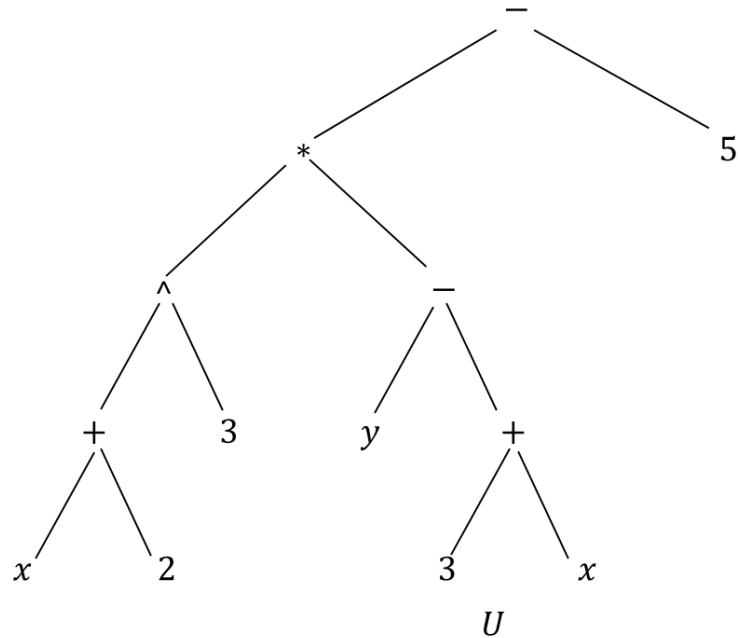


Figure 2.2: A rooted binary tree modeling arithmetic

## Section 5: Graph Coloring

Let  $C$  be a set of colors. A coloring of a graph  $G = (V, E)$  is a function  $f: V \rightarrow C$ . A coloring is proper in case  $f(u) \neq f(v)$ , whenever  $u \sim v$ . For the remainder of this chapter all colorings will be proper colorings. Clearly, we take  $G$  to be simple.

Two important questions arise. First, what is the minimum number of colors required to color a given graph  $G$ ? This number is denoted by  $\chi(G)$ , and is called the chromatic number of  $G$ . The second question is, if we are given a set of colors,  $C$ , of size  $m$ , how many ways can we color  $G$  using the colors from  $C$ ? We denote the answer by  $P(G, m)$ . We realize that  $m$  is variable, so we call the function  $P(G, x)$  the chromatic polynomial of  $G$ . To prove that this is always a polynomial we need several definitions, and a lemma.

Given a graph  $G = (V, E)$ , and an edge  $e = \{u, v\} \in E$ , the edge-deleted subgraph is the graph  $G - e = (V, E - \{e\})$ . Meanwhile, the contraction of  $G$  by  $e$ , denoted  $G/e$ , is the graph obtained from  $G - e$  by identifying the endpoints  $u$  and  $v$ , and any resulting multiple edges identified to a single edge.

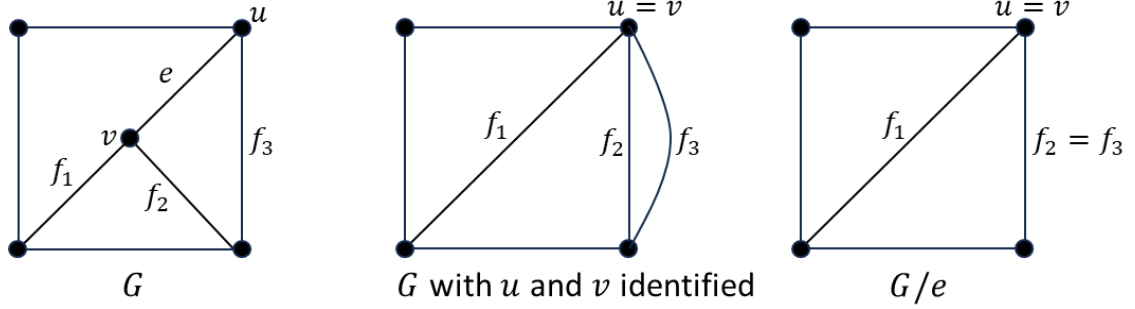


Figure 2.3: The graph  $G$  contracted by the edge  $e$

**Lemma 2.11:** (Fundamental Reduction) *Let  $G = (V, E)$  be a simple graph, and  $e = \{u, v\} \in E$ . Then*

$$P(G - e, x) = P(G, x) + P(G/e, x)$$

Proof: Any proper coloring of  $G - e$  either has  $f(u) = f(v)$ , in which case it gives a proper coloring of  $G/e$ , or  $f(u) \neq f(v)$ , in which case it gives a proper coloring of  $G$ . ■

**Corollary 2.12:** (Fundamental Reduction Theorem) *If  $G = (V, E)$  is a simple graph, and  $e \in E$ , then*

$$P(G, x) = P(G - e, x) - P(G/e, x).$$

The graph  $G = (V, \emptyset)$ , with  $|V| = n$  is denoted by  $I_n$ . Clearly  $P(I_n, x) = x^n$ . This is the basis step for an induction proof of

**Corollary 2.13:** *If  $G = (V, E)$  is a simple graph, then  $P(G, x)$  is a polynomial in  $x$ .*

Proof: We induct on  $|E|$ . The base case is above.

For the inductive step we suppose that the theorem holds for all graphs with fewer than  $k$  edges. We let  $G$  be a graph with  $|E| = k$ . Thus, both  $G - e$ , and  $G/e$  have fewer than  $k$  edges. Therefore  $P(G - e, x)$  and  $P(G/e, x)$  are polynomials in  $x$ . Hence, by the Fundamental Reduction Theorem,  $P(G, x)$  is a polynomial in  $x$ . ■

We state without proof

**Theorem 2.14:** *If  $G_1 \cap G_2 = \emptyset$ , then  $P(G_1 \cup G_2, x) = P(G_1, x) \cdot P(G_2, x)$ .*

Before we proceed with an example we observe that

$$P(K_n, x) = x(x - 1)(x - 2) \dots (x - n + 1).$$

We will use the notation  $x^{(n)}$  for the polynomial  $x(x - 1)(x - 2) \dots (x - n + 1)$ . Also, in practice we will denote  $P(G, x)$  by placing large square brackets around  $G$ .

Example:

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{Square with diagonal } e \end{array} \right] = \left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{Square with diagonal } f \end{array} \right] - \left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{Triangle} \end{array} \right]$$

Now we apply the reduction theorem to  $G - e$ .

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{Square with diagonal } f \end{array} \right] = \left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{Square} \end{array} \right] - \left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{Triangle} \end{array} \right]$$

Since

$$\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{Square} \end{array} \right] = x \left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{Triangle} \end{array} \right]$$

We have that  $P(G - e, x) = (x - 1)P(K_3, x)$ . Therefore,

$$P(G, x) = (x - 1)P(K_3, x) - P(K_3, x) = (x - 2)P(K_3, x) = x(x - 1)(x - 2)^2.$$

Similar to the previous theorems of this section we have

**Theorem 2.15:** (Second Reduction Theorem) *If  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  are simple graphs with*

$$G_1 \cap G_2 = K_m, \text{ then } P(G_1 \cup G_2, x) = \frac{P(G_1, x) \cdot P(G_2, x)}{x^{(m)}}.$$

By employing the reduction theorems, we have a fairly efficient procedure to compute  $P(G, x)$ .

This in turn allows us to compute  $\chi(G)$ . We observe that the value of  $P(G, x)$  will be zero whenever  $x$  is a nonnegative whole number strictly smaller than  $\chi(G)$ . So  $\chi(G)$  is characterized as being the smallest nonnegative integer for which  $P(G, x) \neq 0$ .

In addition, by the factor theorem from basic algebra, if  $\chi(G) = k$  we can always write  $P(G, x)$  in the form  $x^{e_0}(x - 1)^{e_1}(x - 2)^{e_2} \dots (x - (k - 1))^{e_{k-1}}g(x)$ , where the exponents  $e_i$  are positive integers and  $g(x)$  is a polynomial with no integral roots. Conversely, writing  $P(G, x)$  in this form allows us to deduce  $\chi(G) = k$ . In fact,  $P(G, k)$  will be the number ways of properly coloring  $G$  using a set of  $k$  colors.

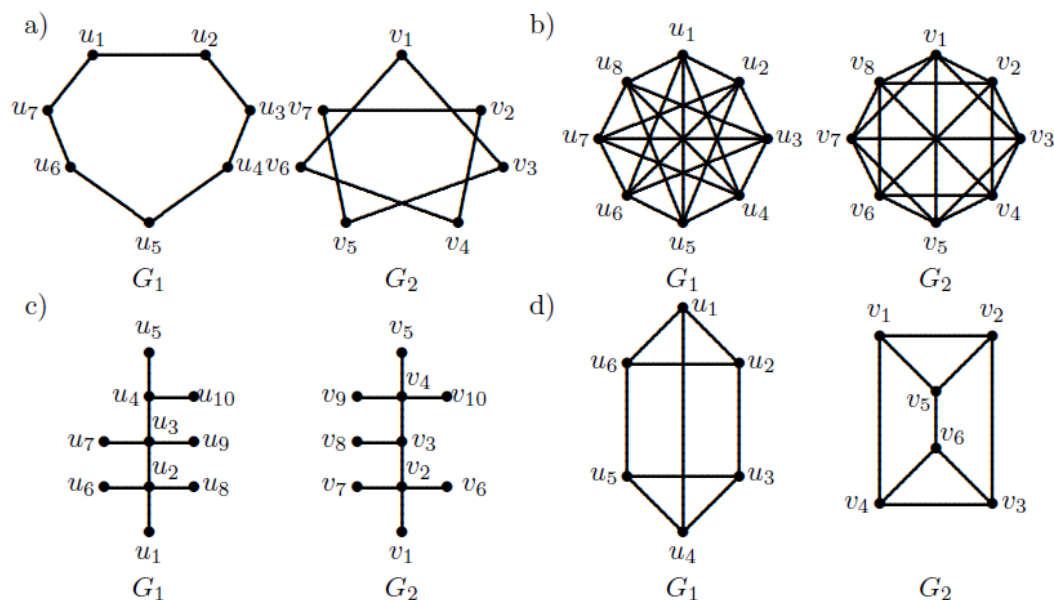
**Warning:** A common mistake occurs when one finds a coloring of  $G$  using  $k$  colors and deduces that  $\chi(G) = k$ . The correct deduction is  $\chi(G) \leq k$ . To show equality we must either use the idea above, or perhaps the last theorem.

**Theorem 2.16:** *If  $G$  is a simple graph with an induced subgraph isomorphic to  $K_m$ , then*  

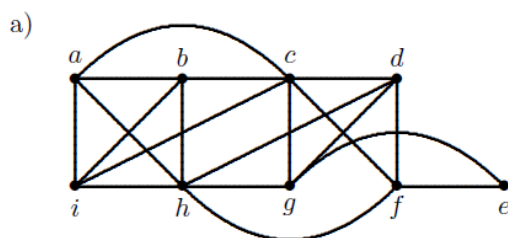
$$\chi(G) \geq m.$$

## Chapter 2 exercises:

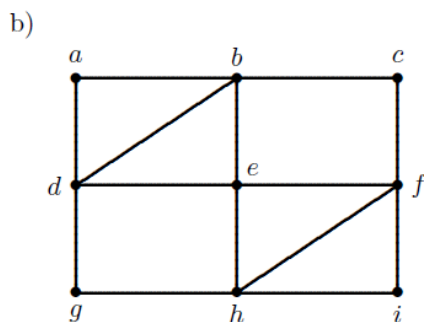
1. For each pair of graphs find a graph isomorphism  $\varphi: G_1 \rightarrow G_2$ , and confirm  $\varphi$  is edge-preserving using adjacency matrices, or prove that  $G_1 \not\cong G_2$ .



2. For which values of  $n$  is  $C_n$  bipartite? For which values of  $n$  is  $Q_n$  bipartite?
3. Prove the first theorem from section 2.3.
4. For each graph below i) find an Eulerian path, or prove that none exists, and ii) find a Hamiltonian cycle or prove that none exists.



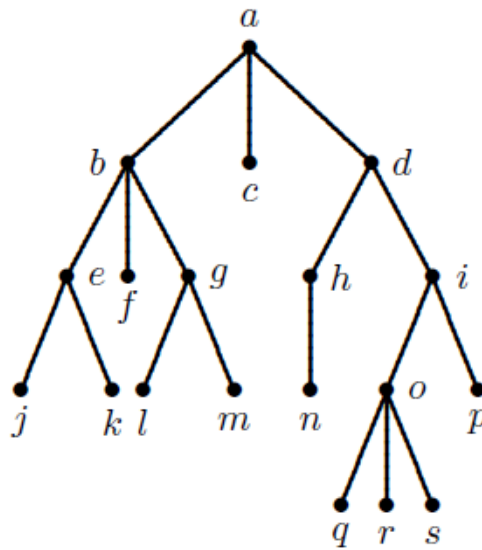
c)  $Q_3$ , the 3-cube



d) the Petersen graph

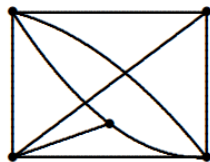
5. Answer the following questions about the rooted tree.

- Which vertex is the root
- Which vertex is the parent of m?
- Which vertices are internal?
- Which vertices are siblings of q?
- Which vertices are leaves?
- Which vertices are ancestors of p?
- Which vertices are children of b?
- Which vertices are descendants of d?
- Which vertices are grandchildren of b?
- What level is i at?

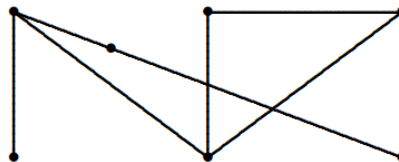


6. For each graph determine its chromatic number  $\chi(G)$ . Justify your answers.

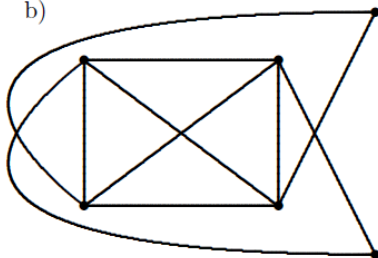
a)



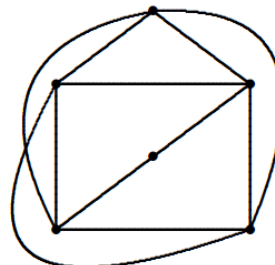
c)



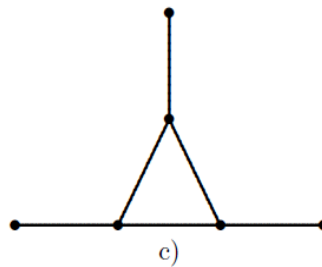
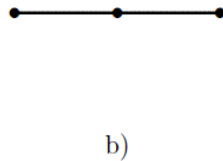
b)



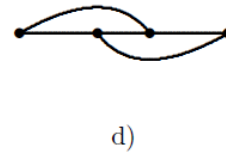
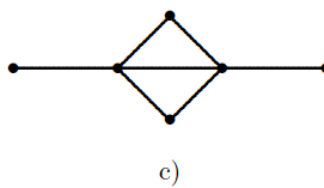
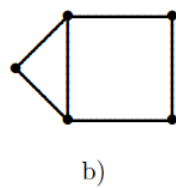
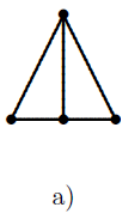
d)



7. In assigning frequencies to mobile radio telephones, a zone gets a frequency to be used by all vehicles in the zone. Two zones that interfere (because of proximity or meteorological reasons) must get different frequencies. How many different frequencies are required if there are 6 zones,  $a, b, c, d, e$ , and  $f$ , where zone  $a$  interferes with zone  $b$  only;  $b$  interferes with  $a, c$  and  $d$ ;  $c$  with  $b, d$  and  $e$ ;  $d$  with  $b, c$  and  $e$ ;  $e$  with  $c, d$  and  $f$ ; and  $f$  with  $e$  only? Justify your answer.
8. Find the chromatic polynomial of each graph. Use the chromatic polynomial to find the number of ways of coloring the graph in at most 3 colors. repeat for at most 4 colors.



9. Let  $L_n$  be the graph consisting of a simple chain of  $n$  vertices.
- Use the Fundamental Reduction Theorem to find a recursive formula for  $P(L_n, x)$ .
  - Find a closed form formula for  $P(L_n, x)$ .
10. Let  $C_n$  denote the simple cycle on  $n$  vertices.
- Repeat exercise 10 for  $P(C_{2m}, x)$  using only even values of  $n$  for the recursive formula.
  - Repeat part a) for  $C_{2k+1}$  using only odd values of  $n$  for the recursive formula.
11. Use reduction theorems to compute the chromatic polynomials of each graph. Use the chromatic polynomial to compute the graph's chromatic number. Find a coloring using the minimal number of colors.





## **PART II: Advanced Counting**

We have seen in both chapter one and chapter two, that there are counting problems which require more than the basic tools. In Chapter Three we bring basic algebra to bear on counting problems that come in sequences. In Chapter Four we unleash abstract algebra on the counting problem.

## Chapter Three: Generating Functions

We saw at the end of chapter one that there are problems which can easily be posed, but which do not admit solutions by the tactics of basic counting. In this chapter we develop further tactics, in part to rectify this apparent shortfall.

### Section 1: Ordinary Generating Functions

If  $f$  is a smooth enough function near  $x = 0$  it can be expanded (via Taylor's Theorem usually) in terms of a Maclaurin Series. That is, in some neighborhood of  $x = 0$ , there is no difference between the function  $f(x)$ , and the values of the power series

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$$

In fact, Taylor's Theorem tells us that the coefficients  $a_k = f^{(k)}(0)/k!$ , where  $f^{(k)}(x)$  is the  $k$ th derivative of  $f(x)$ . If

$$f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k x^k$$

for all values of  $x$  in some neighborhood of  $x = 0$ , we say that  $f(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence of coefficients  $(a_k)_{k=0}^{\infty}$ .

Example:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{1-x} = 1 + x + x^2 + \cdots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} 1 \cdot x^k, \text{ for } -1 < x < 1.$$

So  $f(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the constant sequence  $(1, 1, 1, 1, \dots) = (1)_{k=0}^{\infty}$ .

Example:  $f(x) = (1+x)^4 = 1 + 4x + 6x^2 + 4x^3 + x^4$ , for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , so  $f(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence

$$(1, 4, 6, 4, 1, 0, 0, \dots) = \left( \binom{4}{k} \right)_{k=0}^{\infty}.$$

Our first challenge is to develop a set of tools which allow us to build a library of basic generating functions.

**Theorem 3.1:** If  $f(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(a_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$ , and  $g(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(b_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$  then

- a)  $f(x) \pm g(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(a_n \pm b_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$
- b)  $f(x)g(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(c_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$ , where

$$c_k = \sum_{m=0}^k a_m b_{k-m}.$$

- c)  $f'(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence

$$(a_1, 2a_2, 3a_3, \dots) = ((n+1)a_{n+1})_{n=0}^{\infty}.$$

d) The function  $F(x)$ , with  $F(0) = 0$  and  $F'(x) = f(x)$ , is the ordinary generating function for the sequence

$$(0, a_0, \frac{a_1}{2}, \frac{a_2}{3}, \dots, \frac{a_n}{n+1}, \dots).$$

Proof: See your favorite calculus II textbook. ■

Notice that we can also deduce that  $xf'(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(na_n)_{n=0}^\infty$ . Similarly, if  $F$  is as in part d), then  $F(x)/x$  generates  $(a_n/(n+1))_{n=0}^\infty$ . Finally, we remark that we may replace the symbol  $x$  with all sorts of things formally, and deduce new and fun-filled facts.

Example: Since  $1/(1-x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(1^n)_{n=0}^\infty$ , we can conclude that  $1/(1-2x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(2^n)_{n=0}^\infty$ . Also  $1/(1+x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $((-1)^n)_{n=0}^\infty$ .

Example: From the previous example,

$$\int \frac{dx}{1+x} = \int \left( \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n x^n \right) dx.$$

Now technically we can only interchange the order of integration and summation if we have the right kind of convergence of our power series. Since we are only interested in formal manipulation of power series, we'll not worry about this subtlety here, nor henceforth. Thus, we integrate the left-hand side and integrate the right-hand side term-by-term to obtain

$$\ln(1+x) = \int \frac{dx}{1+x} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \left[ \int x^n dx \right] = \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{n+1}}{n+1} \right] + C$$

The value of the constant of integration  $C$  is found to be 0 by substituting in  $x = 0$  and evaluating  $\ln 1 = 0$ . So  $\ln(1+x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $\left( \frac{(-1)^n}{n+1} \right)_{n=0}^\infty$ .

Example: Similarly we can start with

$$\frac{1}{1-x} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x^n.$$

We differentiate both sides of the equation with respect to  $x$ . We interchange the order of differentiation and summation on the right-hand side. We arrive at

$$\frac{1}{(1-x)^2} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} nx^{n-1} = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} (m+1)x^m.$$

$$\text{Thus } \frac{x}{(1-x)^2} = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} (m+1)x^{m+1} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} kx^k.$$

So  $\frac{x}{(1-x)^2}$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(k)_{k=0}^\infty$ .

## Section 2: Applications to Counting

Consider the generating function  $(1+x)^4 = 1 + 4x + 6x^2 + 4x^3 + x^4 + 0x^5 + 0x^6 + \dots$ , which generates the sequence  $\binom{4}{k}_{k=0}^{\infty}$ . This sequence terms give the number of  $k$ -subsets of a 4-set. This function is the result of evaluating the expression

$$(1+ax)(1+bx)(1+cx)(1+dx)$$

At  $a = b = c = d = 1$ . The expansion of this expression gives

$$1 + (a+b+c+d)x + (ab+ac+ad+bc+bd+cd)x^2 + (abc+abd+acd+bcd)x^3 + (abcd)x^4.$$

As  $i$  runs from 0 to 4 the coefficient on  $x^i$  in this expansion clearly enumerates all of the subsets of  $\{a, b, c, d\}$  of size  $i$ .

More generally, the coefficient of  $x^k$  in the expansion of  $(1+x)^n$  is the number of  $k$ -subsets of an  $n$ -set. If we write the expansion of  $(1+a_1x)(1+a_2x)(1+a_3x) \cdot \dots \cdot (1+a_nx)$ , then the coefficient of  $x^k$  is an ordered list describing all  $k$ -subsets of  $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ .

In fact,  $(1+x)^n$  results if we set  $a_i = 1$ , for  $i = 1, \dots, n$  in the expression

$$(1+a_1x)(1+a_2x)(1+a_3x) \cdot \dots \cdot (1+a_nx).$$

Now what about  $(1+ax+a^2x^2+a^3x^3)(1+bx+b^2x^2)(1+cx)$ ? Upon expansion we find this is

$$1 + (a+b+c)x + (a^2+ab+ac+b^2+bc)x^2 + (a^3+a^2b+a^2c+ab^2+abc+b^2c)x^3 + (a^3b+a^3c+a^2b^2)x^4 + (a^3b^2+a^3bc)x^5 + (a^3b^2c)x^6.$$

Setting  $a = b = c = 1$  we get

$$(1+x+x^2+x^3)(1+x+x^2)(1+x) = 1 + 3x + 5x^2 + 6x^3 + 3x^4 + 2x^5 + x^6.$$

So, what is the combinatorial significance of this sequence?

After a little thought, and considering the coefficients in the first expansion, we realize this counts the number of solutions in nonnegative integers to  $y_1 + y_2 + y_3 = i$ , where  $y_1 \leq 3$ ,  $y_2 \leq 2$ , and  $y_3 \leq 1$  as  $i$  runs from 0 to 6. Which is to say that the first expression generates all multisets of size  $i$  from  $\{a, b, c\}$ , using at most three  $a$ 's, at most two  $b$ 's, and at most one  $c$ .

In general, we wish to compute the number of integral solutions to  $y_1 + y_2 + \dots + y_k = r$ , where  $a_i \leq y_i \leq b_i$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, k$ , and the  $a_i$ 's and  $b_i$ 's are integral lower and upper bounds. To do this we can now use a generating function approach.

We simply compute the coefficient of  $x^r$  in the expansion of

$$\prod_{i=1}^k (x^{a_i} + x^{a_i+1} + \dots + x^{b_i}) = \prod_{i=1}^k \left( \sum_{j=a_i}^{b_i} x^j \right).$$

Probably we get a computer algebra system to do this for us. Again, we would use a computer algebra system if we used place-holders  $d_i$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, k$  to generate the actual solutions, i.e. if we wanted to expand

$$\prod_{i=1}^k \left( \sum_{j=a_i}^{b_i} (d_i x_i)^j \right).$$

Naturally we could re-index the problem to count the number of solutions in nonnegative integers  $y_1 + \cdots + y_k = s$ , where  $y_i \leq c_i = b_i - a_i$ , and  $s = r - a_1 - a_2 - \cdots - a_k$ . Now we need the coefficient of  $x^s$  in the expansion of

$$\prod_{i=1}^k (1 + x + x^2 + \cdots + x^{c_i}) = \prod_{i=1}^k \left( \sum_{j=0}^{c_i} x^j \right).$$

As might happen in an ideal world, we might have  $s \leq c_i$  for all  $i$ , so that there are effectively no upper bounds. Here we want to realize that the coefficient of  $x^s$  in the expansion of

$$\prod_{i=1}^k (1 + x + x^2 + \cdots + x^{c_i}) = \prod_{i=1}^k \left( \sum_{j=0}^{c_i} x^j \right),$$

is the same as the coefficient of  $x^s$  in the expansion of

$$\prod_{i=1}^k (1 + x + x^2 + \cdots) = \prod_{i=1}^k \left( \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} x^j \right) = \prod_{i=1}^k \left( \frac{1}{1-x} \right) = (1-x)^{-k}.$$

So, apparently  $(1-x)^{-k}$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence

$$\left( \binom{s+k-1}{s} \right)_{s=0}^{\infty}.$$

Amazingly this little gem of information can also be derived from the general version of the Binomial Theorem discovered by Isaac Newton.

**Theorem 3.2:** (Newton) *For any nonzero real number  $u$ ,*

$$(1+x)^u = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{u}{k} x^k, \text{ where } \binom{u}{k} = \frac{u(u-1)(u-2) \cdots (u-k+1)}{k!}.$$

Proof: See an old calculus book, or an advanced calculus book. ■

When we set  $u = -p$ , where  $p$  is a positive integer, we compute that

$$\begin{aligned} \binom{-p}{k} &= \frac{(-p)(-p-1)(-p-2) \cdots (-p-k+1)}{k!} \\ &= (-1)^k \frac{(p+k-1)(p+k-2) \cdots (p+1)p}{k!} \\ &= (-1)^k \binom{p+k-1}{k}. \end{aligned}$$

So, by replacing  $x$  with  $-x$  in the Binomial Theorem we arrive at

$$(1-x)^{-p} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{-p}{k} (-x)^k = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{p+k-1}{k} (-1)^{2k} x^k = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{p+k-1}{k} x^k.$$

Thus,  $(1-x)^{-p}$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence whose terms are the number of solutions to the donut shoppe problem.

Before we leave this topic, we remark that there are other directions in which we might generalize. For example, the number of ways to make  $n$  cents change using pennies, nickels, dimes and quarters is the number of solutions in nonnegative integers to

$$y_1 + 5y_2 + 10y_3 + 25y_4 = n.$$

This is also the coefficient of  $x^n$  in the expansion of

$$(1-x)^{-1}(1-x^5)^{-1}(1-x^{10})^{-1}(1-x^{25})^{-1}.$$

So, we can use generating functions to compute the number of, and enumerate the solutions to, a great variety of linear Diophantine equations.

### Section 3: Exponential Generating Functions

As we saw in chapter one, Stirling Numbers of the Second Kind are important for counting solutions to occupancy problems. In order to derive the formula given for  $S(n, k)$  in chapter one, we will use exponential generating functions.

If  $f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{a_k}{k!} x^k$ , for all values of  $x$  in some neighborhood of  $x = 0$ , we say that  $f(x)$  is exponential generating function for the sequence of coefficients  $(a_k)_{k=0}^{\infty}$ .

So, for example,  $f(x) = e^x$  is the exponential generating function for  $(1^n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$ . And, in general,  $g(x) = e^{\alpha x}$  is the exponential generating function for  $(\alpha^k)_{k=0}^{\infty}$ .

We recall that combinations and permutations are related by  $P(n, k) = k! C(n, k)$ , or  $P(n, k)/k! = C(n, k)$ . Similar formulas apply when some repetition is allowed, ala the MISSISSIPPI problem. So, we consider the expansion of

$$\left(1 + \frac{a}{1!}x + \frac{a^2}{2!}x^2 + \frac{a^3}{3!}x^3\right) \left(1 + \frac{b}{1!}x + \frac{b^2}{2!}x^2\right) \left(1 + \frac{c}{1!}x\right)$$

which comes out to

$$\begin{aligned} &1 + \left(\frac{a}{1!} + \frac{b}{1!} + \frac{c}{1!}\right)x + \left(\frac{a^2}{2!} + \frac{ab}{1!1!} + \frac{ac}{1!1!} + \frac{b^2}{2!} + \frac{bc}{1!1!}\right)x^2 + \\ &\quad \left(\frac{a^3}{3!} + \frac{a^2b}{2!1!} + \frac{a^2c}{2!1!} + \frac{ab^2}{1!2!} + \frac{abc}{1!1!1!} + \frac{b^2c}{2!1!}\right)x^3 + \\ &\quad \left(\frac{a^3b}{3!1!} + \frac{a^3c}{3!1!} + \frac{a^2b^2}{2!2!} + \frac{a^2bc}{2!1!1!} + \frac{ab^2c}{1!2!1!}\right)x^4 + \\ &\quad \left(\frac{a^3b^2}{3!2!} + \frac{a^3bc}{3!1!1!} + \frac{a^2b^2c}{2!2!1!}\right)x^5 + \left(\frac{a^3b^2c}{3!2!1!}\right)x^6. \end{aligned}$$

Next, we multiply and divide the coefficient of  $x^k$  by  $k!$  as  $k = 0, 1, \dots, 6$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & 1 + 1! \left( \frac{a}{1!} + \frac{b}{1!} + \frac{c}{1!} \right) \frac{x}{1!} + 2! \left( \frac{a^2}{2!} + \frac{ab}{1!1!} + \frac{ac}{1!1!} + \frac{b^2}{2!} + \frac{bc}{1!1!} \right) \frac{x^2}{2!} + \\ & 3! \left( \frac{a^3}{3!} + \frac{a^2b}{2!1!} + \frac{a^2c}{2!1!} + \frac{ab^2}{1!2!} + \frac{abc}{1!1!1!} + \frac{b^2c}{2!1!} \right) \frac{x^3}{3!} + \\ & 4! \left( \frac{a^3b}{3!1!} + \frac{a^3c}{3!1!} + \frac{a^2b^2}{2!2!} + \frac{a^2bc}{2!1!1!} + \frac{ab^2c}{1!2!1!} \right) \frac{x^4}{4!} + \\ & 5! \left( \frac{a^3b^2}{3!2!} + \frac{a^3bc}{3!1!1!} + \frac{a^2b^2c}{2!2!1!} \right) \frac{x^5}{5!} + 6! \left( \frac{a^3b^2c}{3!2!1!} \right) \frac{x^6}{6!}. \end{aligned}$$

This simplifies to

$$\begin{aligned} & 1 + (a + b + c) \frac{x}{1!} + (a^2 + 2ab + 2ac + b^2 + 2bc) \frac{x^2}{2!} + \\ & (a^3 + 3a^2b + 3a^2c + 3ab^2 + 6abc + 3b^2c) \frac{x^3}{3!} + \\ & (4a^3b + 4a^3c + 6a^2b^2 + 12a^2bc + 12ab^2c) \frac{x^4}{4!} + (10a^3b^2 + 20a^3bc + 30a^2b^2c) \frac{x^5}{5!} + \frac{60x^6}{6!} \end{aligned}$$

Now, for example, the coefficient on a "sub-multi-set" term like  $a^2b^2c$ , is the number of 5-strings over  $\{a, b, c\}$  using 2 a's, 2 b's and 1 c. By setting  $a = b = c = 1$ , we can generate the number of permutations with partial replacement over the given alphabet.

**Theorem 3.3:** Given  $r$  types of objects, with  $e_i$  indistinguishable objects of type  $i$ ,  $i = 1, 2, \dots, r$ , the number of distinguishable permutations of length  $k$  using up to  $e_i$  objects of type  $i$  is the coefficient of  $x^k/k!$  in the exponential generating function

$$\left( 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \dots + \frac{x^{e_1}}{e_1!} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \dots + \frac{x^{e_2}}{e_2!} \right) \dots \left( 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \dots + \frac{x^{e_r}}{e_r!} \right)$$

As a final application of exponential generating functions we derive the formula

$$S(n, k) = \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{i=0}^k (-1)^i \binom{k}{i} (k-i)^n.$$

We observe that  $k! S(n, k) = T(n, k)$  the number of onto functions from an  $n$ -set to a  $k$ -set. This is also the number of  $n$ -permutations of a  $k$ -set using each set element at least once. So  $T(n, k)$  is the coefficient of  $x^n/n!$  in the expansion of

$$\left( x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots \right)^k = (e^x - 1)^k.$$

By Newton's Binomial Theorem

$$\begin{aligned}(e^x - 1)^k &= \sum_{i=0}^k \binom{k}{i} (-1)^i e^{(k-i)x} = \sum_{i=0}^k \binom{k}{i} (-1)^i \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (k-i)^n \frac{x^n}{n!} \right] \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!} \left[ \sum_{i=0}^k \binom{k}{i} (-1)^i (k-i)^n \right]\end{aligned}$$

We've used the known Maclaurin series for  $e^x$ . Also the order of summation can be reversed since the Maclaurin series for  $e^x$  converges uniformly on the entire real line.

Therefore, the formula for  $S(n, k)$  is as stated. To boot, we have the formula

$$T(n, k) = \sum_{i=0}^k (-1)^i \binom{k}{i} (k-i)^n.$$

## Section 4: Recurrence Relations

Given a sequence,  $a$ , with domain  $D = \{n \in \mathbb{Z} \mid n \geq m\}$  and codomain  $\mathbb{R}$ , a recurrence relation consists of a finite number of initial terms and a formula which for all  $n \in \{l \in \mathbb{Z} \mid l \geq k\}$  (where  $k \geq m$ ) relates  $a_n$ , in some manner, to a finite number of preceding terms of the sequence and possibly a function of  $n$ .

We will almost exclusively be interested in recurrence relations for which the recursive formula is of the form

$$a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2} + \cdots + c_k a_{n-k} + f(n)$$

where  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $c_k \neq 0$  and where  $a_m, \dots, a_{m+k}$  are given. Such a recurrence relation is a linear recurrence relation with constant coefficients. When the function  $f(n) = 0$ , we call the recurrence relation homogeneous. If  $f(n)$  is not identically zero, the recurrence relation is nonhomogeneous. The number  $k$  is called the degree of the relation.

**Warning:** A recursive formula which defines a sequence does not completely determine the sequence. Observe, for example, that geometric sequences with common ratio  $r$  all satisfy the recursive formula

$$a_n = r \cdot a_{n-1}, \text{ for } n \geq 1.$$

What picks out a single sequence in this case is its initial term. In general, we need to know several initial terms, which are called the initial conditions, of the sequence. Given a sufficient number of initial conditions, and a recurrence formula, we get exactly one sequence of real numbers.

Example: Suppose that we deposit  $A_0$  dollars in an account drawing  $t$  percent interest per annum compounded yearly, and that no withdrawals occur. Then if  $A_n$  denotes the amount of money in the account after  $n$  years, we have

$$A_0 \text{ given and } A_n = \left(1 + \frac{t}{100}\right) A_{n-1}, \text{ when } n \geq 1.$$

In this simplest of all cases, it is clear that the initial condition is of paramount importance.



It's also true that we can find an explicit formula for  $A_n$  in this case since the sequence is geometric. In short  $A_n = r^n \cdot A_0$  for  $n \geq 0$ , where  $r = \left(1 + \left(\frac{t}{100}\right)\right)$ . We call this solving the recurrence relation. In this example we solved it by inspection. The general case is more difficult and is the topic of the next section.

Example: A canonical example relates the story of the Towers of Hanoi. A group of monks wished a magical tower to be constructed from 1000 stone rings. The rings were to be of 1000 different sizes. The size and composition of the rings was to be designed so that any ring could support the entire weight of all of the rings smaller than itself, but each ring would be crushed beneath the weight of any larger ring.

The monks hired the lowest bidder to construct the tower in a clearing in the dense jungle nearby. Upon completion of construction the engineers brought the monks to see their work. The monks admired the exquisite workmanship, but informed the engineers that the tower was not in the proper clearing.

In the jungle there were only three permanent clearings. The monks had labelled them  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$ . The engineers had labelled them in reverse order. The monks instructed the engineers to move the tower from clearing  $A$  to clearing  $C$ !

Because of the massive size of the rings, the engineers could only move one ring per day. No ring could be left anywhere in the jungle except one of  $A$ ,  $B$ , or  $C$ . Finally, each clearing was only large enough so that rings could be stored there by stacking them one on top of another.

The monks then asked the engineers how long it would take for them to fix the problem.

Before they all flipped a gasket, the most mathematically talented engineer came upon the following solution.

Let  $H_n$  denote the minimum number of days required to move an  $n$  ring tower from  $A$  to  $C$  under the constraints given. Then  $H_1 = 1$ , and in general an  $n$  ring tower can be moved from  $A$  to  $C$  by first moving the top  $(n - 1)$  rings from  $A$  to  $B$  leaving the bottom ring at  $A$ , then moving the bottom ring from  $A$  to  $C$ , and then moving the top  $(n - 1)$  rings from clearing  $B$  to clearing  $C$ . So,  $H_n \leq 2 \cdot H_{n-1} + 1$ , for  $n \geq 2$ . A little thought allows us to conclude that we have  $H_1 = 1$  and  $H_n = 2 \cdot H_{n-1} + 1$ , for  $n \geq 2$ .

Because all but one of the terms in this sequence satisfy the recursive formula  $H_k = 2H_{k-1} + 1$  we can solve for a closed form for this sequence by unwinding.

$$\begin{aligned}
 H_n &= 2H_{n-1} + 1 \\
 &= 2(2H_{n-2} + 1) + 1 \\
 &= 2^2H_{n-2} + 2 + 1 \\
 &= 2^2(2H_{n-3} + 1) + 2 + 1 \\
 &= 2^3H_{n-3} + 2^2 + 2 + 1 \\
 &\vdots \\
 &= 2^jH_{n-j} + 2^{j-1} + 2^{j-2} + \cdots + 2 + 1, \text{ at the } j\text{th step}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \vdots \\
 &= 2^{n-1}H_{n-(n-1)} + 2^{n-2} + \cdots + 2^3 + 2^2 + 2 + 1 \\
 &= 2^{n-1}H_1 + 2^{n-2} + \cdots + 2^3 + 2^2 + 2 + 1 \\
 &= 2^{n-1} + 2^{n-2} + \cdots + 2^3 + 2^2 + 2 + 1 \\
 &= 2^n - 1, \text{ by the geometric sum formula}
 \end{aligned}$$

So, the problem would be fixed in  $2^{1000} - 1$  days, or approximately  $2.93564 \times 10^{296}$  centuries. Hence the term job security!

Example: A more realistic example might be to count the number of binary strings of length  $n$  which contain a pair of consecutive 0's. Let  $B_n$  denote the set of bit strings of length  $n$  which contain a pair of consecutive zeroes. Also let  $b_n = |B_n|$ . By listing all of the possibilities (this is called enumeration) we compute  $b_0 = 0 = b_1$  and  $b_2 = 1$ .

To find  $b_3$  we write down all bit strings of length 3 and cross out those which do not have a pair of consecutive zeroes. What's left is 000,001 and 100. So  $b_3 = 3$ . Similarly,  $b_4 = 8$  since  $B_4 = \{0000,0001,0010,0011,0100,1000,1001,1100\}$ .

We might continue this time-consuming and tedious process hoping to discover a pattern by sheer luck, or we can attempt to use a combinatorial approach.

If  $x \in B_n$ , then either  $x = 1y$ , where  $y \in B_{n-1}$ , or  $x = 0w$ , where  $w \in \{0,1\}^{n-1}$ . But in the second case we have  $x = 01z$ , where  $z \in B_{n-2}$ , or  $w = 00v$ , where  $v$  is any binary string of length  $n - 2$ . Since the three sub-cases  $x = 1y$ ,  $x = 01w$  and  $x = 00v$  are exclusive, by the addition principle

$$b_n = b_{n-1} + b_{n-2} + 2^{n-2}, \text{ for } n \geq 2.$$

Together with the initial conditions  $b_0 = b_1 = 0$ , this completely determines the sequence. A good check is that the terms for small values of  $n$  we generated actually satisfy this relation. Of course, we probably would not want to use the recursive definition to find  $b_{128}$ . This motivates the next section.

## Section 5: The Method of Characteristic Roots

In the previous section we noted that any homogeneous linear recurrence relation of degree one with constant coefficient corresponds to a geometric sequence. These can therefore be solved by inspection. Also, from the Towers of Hanoi story, one might guess correctly that most degree one nonhomogeneous linear recurrence relations with constant coefficients can be solved by unwinding. Neither of these methods is powerful enough in general. Thus, in this section we introduce a basic method for solving homogeneous linear recurrence relations with constant coefficients.

We begin by considering the case  $k = 2$ . Hence, we have a recurrence formula of the form  $a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq m$ , where  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  are real constants. We must also be given two initial conditions  $a_{m-1}$  and  $a_{m-2}$  so that the recursive formula can be used to compute  $a_m$ .

We will dispense with the general case here, re-indexing if necessary, so that we may suppose that  $m = 2$ . To clarify, we are given  $a_0, a_1$  and the formula  $a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq 2$ .

Notice that  $c_2 \neq 0$  or else we have a linear recurrence relation with constant coefficients and degree one. What we seek is a closed form expression for  $a_n$ , which is a function of  $n$  alone, and which is therefore independent of the previous terms of the sequence.

Of fundamental importance to this method is the characteristic polynomial, denoted  $\chi(x)$ , of the recurrence relation. We are re-using  $\chi$  – but you should not have any problem distinguishing when we use  $\chi$  for characteristic function from when we use it for chromatic polynomial.

For the case under consideration we define  $\chi(x) = x^2 - c_1x - c_2$ . Notice that the degree of  $\chi(x)$  coincides with the degree of the recurrence relation. Notice also that the non-leading coefficients of  $\chi(x)$  are simply the negatives of the coefficients of the recurrence relation. This allows us to generalize the definition so that the characteristic polynomial of

$$a_n = c_1a_{n-1} + c_2a_{n-2} + \cdots + c_ka_{n-k} \text{ is } \chi(x) = x^k - c_1x^{k-1} - \cdots - c_{k-1}x - c_k.$$

A number  $r$  (possibly complex) is a characteristic root of the recurrence formula if  $\chi(r) = 0$ . From basic algebra we know that  $r$  is a root of a polynomial if and only if  $(x - r)$  is a factor of the polynomial.

When  $\chi(x)$  is a degree two polynomial either  $\chi(x) = (x - r_1)(x - r_2)$ , where  $r_1 \neq r_2$ , or  $\chi(x) = (x - r)^2$ , for some number  $r$ .

**Theorem 3.4:** Let  $c_1$  and  $c_2 \neq 0$  be real numbers. Suppose that the polynomial  $x^2 - c_1x - c_2$  has two distinct roots  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ . Then a sequence  $a: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfies the recursive formula

$$a_n = c_1a_{n-1} + c_2a_{n-2}, \text{ for } n \geq 2$$

if and only if  $a_m = \alpha r_1^m + \beta r_2^m$ , for all  $m \geq 0$ , for some constants  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .

Proof: If  $a_m = \alpha r_1^m + \beta r_2^m$  for all  $m \geq 0$ , where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are some constants, then since  $r_i^2 - c_1r_i - c_2 = 0$ , for  $i = 1, 2$ , we have  $r_i^2 = c_1r_i + c_2$ , for  $i = 1, 2$ .

Thus, for  $n \geq 2$

$$\begin{aligned} c_1a_{n-1} + c_2a_{n-2} &= c_1(\alpha r_1^{n-1} + \beta r_2^{n-1}) + c_2(\alpha r_1^{n-2} + \beta r_2^{n-2}) \\ &= \alpha r_1^{n-2}(c_1r_1 + c_2) + \beta r_2^{n-2}(c_1r_2 + c_2) \text{ distributing and combining} \\ &= \alpha r_1^{n-2} \cdot r_1^2 + \beta r_2^{n-2} \cdot r_2^2, \text{ by the remark above.} \\ &= \alpha r_1^n + \beta r_2^n = a_n \end{aligned}$$

Conversely, if the terms of  $a$  satisfy the recursive formula and has initial terms  $a_0$  and  $a_1$ , then one checks that the sequence  $a_m = \alpha r_1^m + \beta r_2^m$  for  $m \geq 0$  with

$$\alpha = \frac{a_1 - a_0r_2}{r_1 - r_2} \text{ and } \beta = \frac{a_0r_1 - a_1}{r_1 - r_2}$$

also satisfies the recursive formula and has the same initial conditions. ■

There is no need to memorize the formula at the end of Theorem 3.4 for  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ . The coefficients  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are the solutions to the system of two linear equations in two unknowns.

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 &= \alpha r_1^0 + \beta r_2^0 = \alpha + \beta \\ a_1 &= \alpha r_1^1 + \beta r_2^1 = \alpha r_1 + \beta r_2 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, in general, we will want to be able to solve a system of  $k$  linear equations in  $k$  unknowns.

Example: Solve the recurrence relation  $a_0 = 2, a_1 = 3$  and  $a_n = a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq 2$ .

Solution: The recurrence relation is linear, homogeneous and of degree 2 with constant coefficients  $c_1 = 0$  and  $c_2 = 1$ . The characteristic polynomial is

$$\chi(x) = x^2 - 0 \cdot x - 1 = x^2 - 1.$$

This polynomial has two distinct roots since  $x^2 - 1 = (x - 1)(x + 1)$ . Say  $r_1 = 1$  and  $r_2 = -1$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} 2 &= a_0 = \alpha r_1^0 + \beta r_2^0 = \alpha + \beta \\ 3 &= a_1 = \alpha 1^1 + \beta (-1)^1 = \alpha - \beta \end{aligned}$$

Adding the two equations eliminates  $\beta$  and gives  $5 = 2\alpha$ , aka  $\alpha = 5/2$ . Substituting this into the first equation,  $2 = 5/2 + \beta$ , we see that  $\beta = -1/2$ . Hence

$$a_n = \frac{5}{2} \cdot 1^n + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) (-1)^n = \frac{5}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \cdot (-1)^n \text{ for } n \geq 0.$$

Example: Solve the recurrence relation  $a_1 = 3, a_2 = 5$ , and  $a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq 3$ .

Solution: Here the characteristic polynomial is  $\chi(x) = x^2 - 5x + 6 = (x - 2)(x - 3)$ . So, we know that  $a_m = \alpha 2^m + \beta 3^m$ , for  $m \geq 1$ . The initial conditions give rise to

$$\begin{aligned} 3 &= a_1 = \alpha 2^1 + \beta 3^1 = 2\alpha + 3\beta \\ 5 &= a_2 = \alpha 2^2 + \beta 3^2 = 4\alpha + 9\beta. \end{aligned}$$

If we multiply the top equation through by 2 we get

$$\begin{aligned} 6 &= 4\alpha + 6\beta \\ 5 &= 4\alpha + 9\beta. \end{aligned}$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first eliminates  $\alpha$  and gives  $1 = -3\beta$ . So,  $\beta = -1/3$ . Substitution into the first equation yields  $3 = 2\alpha + 3 \cdot (-1/3)$ , so  $\alpha = 2$ . Thus

$$a_m = 2 \cdot 2^m - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) \cdot 3^m = 2^{m+1} - 3^{m-1}, \text{ for } m \geq 1.$$

The other case mentioned above was that a characteristic polynomial of degree two has one repeated root. Since the proof is similar, we simply state

**Theorem 3.5:** Let  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  be real numbers with  $c_2 \neq 0$  and suppose that the polynomial  $x^2 - c_1x - c_2$  has a root  $r$  with multiplicity 2, so that  $x^2 - c_1x - c_2 = (x - r)^2$ . Then a sequence  $a: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfies the recursive formula

$$a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2}, \text{ for } n \geq 2$$

if and only if  $a_m = \alpha r^m + \beta m r^m$ , for all  $m \geq 0$ , for some constants  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ .

Example: Solve the recurrence relation  $a_0 = -1, a_1 = 4$  and  $a_n = 4a_{n-1} - 4a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq 2$ .

Solution: In this case we have  $\chi(x) = x^2 - 4x + 4 = (x - 2)^2$ . So we know that  $a_m = (\alpha + \beta m)2^m$  for  $m \geq 0$ . Now the initial conditions give rise to the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} -1 &= a_0 = (\alpha + \beta \cdot 0)2^0 = \alpha \\ 4 &= a_1 = (\alpha + \beta \cdot 1)2^1 = 2\alpha + 2\beta \end{aligned}$$

Substituting  $\alpha = -1$  into the second equation gives  $4 = 2(\beta - 1)$ , so  $2 = \beta - 1$  and  $\beta = 3$ . Therefore  $a_m = (3m - 1)2^m$  for  $m \geq 0$ .

Lastly, we state without proof the theorem which governs the general method of characteristic roots.

**Theorem 3.6:** Let  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k \in \mathbb{R}$  with  $c_k \neq 0$ . Suppose that

$\chi(x) = x^k - c_1x^{k-1} - c_2x^{k-2} - \dots - c_{k-1}x - c_k = (x - r_1)^{j_1}(x - r_2)^{j_2} \cdot \dots \cdot (x - r_s)^{j_s}$   
where  $r_1, r_2, \dots, r_s$  are distinct roots of  $\chi(x)$ , and  $j_1, j_2, \dots, j_s$  are positive integers so that  $j_1 + j_2 + j_3 + \dots + j_s = k$ .

Then a sequence  $a: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfies the recursive formula

$a_n = c_1a_{n-1} + c_2a_{n-2} + \dots + c_ka_{n-k}$ , for  $n \geq k$   
if and only if  $a_m = p_1(m)r_1^m + p_2(m)r_2^m + \dots + p_s(m)r_s^m$  for  $m \geq 0$ , where  
 $p_i(m) = \alpha_{0,i} + \alpha_{1,i}m + \alpha_{2,i}m^2 + \dots + \alpha_{j_i-1,i}m^{j_i-1}$ , for  $1 \leq i \leq s$   
and the  $\alpha_{j,i}$ 's are constants.

In the general case we can easily write down the characteristic polynomial. However, it can be quite a challenge to factor it as a product of linear factors per Theorem 3.6. Even if we succeed in factoring the characteristic polynomial into linear factors, we are faced with the tedious task of setting up and solving a system of  $k$  linear equations in  $k$  unknowns (the  $\alpha_{j,i}$ 's). The basic methods of elimination, substitution, or graphing which are covered in a prerequisite course will often not be up to the task. This motivates better notation and more advanced methods for solving systems of equations. This has also been a paid advertisement for a course in linear algebra.

Perhaps more to the point is the fact that recurrence relations are discrete versions of differential equations. So as the final examples of this section indicate, we can have systems of recurrence relations, or even analogues of partial differential equations. The method of characteristic roots will not necessarily apply to these. We will therefore be motivated for the ultimate section of this chapter.

Example: An example of a discrete partial differential equation is given by the two-variable function  $A(m, n)$  which is called Ackermann's Function. The function is recursively defined via

$$A(m, n) = \begin{cases} n + 1, & \text{if } m = 0 \\ A(m - 1, 1), & \text{if } m > 0 \text{ and } n = 0. \\ A(m - 1, A(m, n - 1)), & \text{if } m, n > 0 \end{cases}$$

This is actually only one of the simpler members of a family of functions developed by Wilhelm Ackermann.

Example: One can show by combinatorial argument that the Stirling Numbers of the second kind satisfy the linear recursive formula with non-constant coefficients

$$S(n, k) = kS(n - 1, k) + S(n - 1, k - 1).$$

Example: Pascal's identity for binomial coefficients is a discrete partial differential equation which has an analytic solution!

Example: Let  $a_n$  be the number of ternary strings of length  $n$  which have an even number of 0's and an odd number of 1's.

We can find a system of recursive formulas which the terms of the sequence  $(a_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$  satisfies:

- For each natural number  $n$ , let  $\mathcal{U}_n = \{0, 1, 2\}^n$ .
- $A_n = \{z \in \mathcal{U}_n \mid z \text{ has an even number of 0's and an odd number of 1's}\}.$
- $B_n = \{z \in \mathcal{U}_n \mid z \text{ has an even number of 0's and an even number of 1's}\}.$
- $C_n = \{z \in \mathcal{U}_n \mid z \text{ has an odd number of 0's and an odd number of 1's}\}.$
- $D_n = \{z \in \mathcal{U}_n \mid z \text{ has an odd number of 0's and an even number of 1's}\}.$

Also let  $a_n = |A_n|$ ,  $b_n = |B_n|$ ,  $c_n = |C_n|$ , and  $d_n = |D_n|$ .

1. By the addition principle  $a_n + b_n + c_n + d_n = 3^n$ , for  $n \geq 0$ .
2. If  $w \in A_{n+1}$ , then either  $w = 2x$ , for some  $x \in A_n$ , or  $w = 1y$ , for some  $y \in B_n$ , or  $w = 0z$ , for some  $z \in C_n$ . So by the addition principle  $a_{n+1} = a_n + b_n + c_n$ , for  $n \geq 0$ .
3. Similarly, we have  $b_{n+1} = a_n + b_n + d_n$ , for  $n \geq 0$ .
4. Lastly  $c_{n+1} = a_n + c_n + d_n$ , for  $n \geq 0$ .

Now we have four sequences which simultaneously satisfy the system

$$\begin{aligned} a_n + b_n + c_n + d_n &= 3^n \\ a_n + b_n + c_n &= a_{n+1} \\ a_n + b_n + d_n &= b_{n+1} \\ a_n + c_n + d_n &= c_{n+1} \end{aligned}$$

The initial conditions are  $a_0 = c_0 = d_0 = 0$ , and  $b_0 = 1$ , since the empty string  $\lambda$  contains zero 1's and zero 0's.

## Section 6: The Method of Generating Functions

We begin with an example.

Example: Suppose that we are given the generating function

$$G(x) = \frac{2 - x + x^2}{1 - 2x - x^2 + 2x^3}.$$

Now let's find a closed formula for the sequence it generates. This involves partial fraction expansion, another subject you're supposed to know from Calculus II. In this case we factor the denominator.

$$G(x) = \frac{2 - x + x^2}{(1 + x)(1 - x)(1 - 2x)}.$$

So the rules for partial fraction expansion tell us that

$$G(x) = \frac{2 - x + x^2}{(1 + x)(1 - x)(1 - 2x)} = \frac{A}{1 + x} + \frac{B}{1 - x} + \frac{C}{1 - 2x}, \text{ for all } x \in \mathbb{R} - \{-1, 1, \frac{1}{2}\}.$$

Now multiply both sides by  $(1 + x)(1 - x)(1 - 2x)$  to clear the denominators. Thus

$$2 - x + x^2 = A(1 - x)(1 - 2x) + B(1 + x)(1 - 2x) + C(1 + x)(1 - x), \forall x \in \mathbb{R} - \{-1, 1, \frac{1}{2}\}.$$

Since polynomials are continuous, we deduce that

$$2 - x + x^2 = A(1 - x)(1 - 2x) + B(1 + x)(1 - 2x) + C(1 + x)(1 - x), \forall x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

We can choose three values of  $x$  to generate three equations in the three unknowns  $A, B$  and  $C$  in order to solve for them. Of course, some values of  $x$  give rise to easier systems of equations, especially the roots of the denominator of  $G(x)$ .

Indeed, if  $x = 1$  we have  $2 - x + x^2 = 2 - 1 + 1^2 = 2$  on the left-hand side of our equation, while the right-hand side is

$$A(1 - 1)(1 - 2) + B(1 + 1)(1 - 2) + C(1 + 1)(1 - 1) = A \cdot 0 + B \cdot (-2) + C \cdot 0 = -2B$$

So  $B = -1$ . Evaluating our expression at  $x = -1$  gives  $A = 2/3$ , and evaluating at  $x = 1/2$  gives  $C = 7/3$ . Thus

$$G(x) = \frac{2 - x + x^2}{(1 + x)(1 - x)(1 - 2x)} = \frac{\frac{2}{3}}{1 + x} - \frac{1}{1 - x} + \frac{\frac{7}{3}}{1 - 2x}, \text{ for all } x \in \mathbb{R} - \{-1, 1, \frac{1}{2}\}.$$

By the methods of Section 3.1 we can now easily write a Maclaurin series for  $G(x)$ ,

$$G(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{2}{3}(-1)^k - 1 \cdot 1^k + \frac{7}{3}2^k \right) x^k$$

in a neighborhood of  $x = 0$ . Thus  $G(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence

$$\left( \frac{2}{3}(-1)^k - 1 \cdot 1^k + \frac{7}{3}2^k \right)_{k=0}^{\infty} = (a_k)_{k=0}^{\infty}.$$

The last theorem of the previous section indicates that this sequence  $(a_k)_{k=0}^{\infty}$ , satisfies a linear homogeneous recurrence relation with characteristic polynomial

$$\chi(x) = (x - 1)(x + 1)(x - 2) = x^3 - 2x^2 - x + 2.$$

We might recognize this as  $x^3 \cdot d\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)$ , where  $d$  is the denominator of  $G$ . We say that  $\chi$  and  $d$  are reciprocal polynomials. So our sequence is the solution of the linear homogeneous recurrence relation  $a_n = 2a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} - 2a_{n-3}$ , for  $n \geq 3$ , with initial conditions  $a_0 = 2, a_1 = 3, a_2 = 9$ .

If we can find a way to recapture  $G(x)$  from this recurrence relation, we will have found another method for solving this recurrence relation.

We begin by realizing that we have infinitely many equations

$$\begin{aligned} a_3 &= 2a_2 + a_1 - 2a_0 \\ a_4 &= 2a_3 + a_2 - 2a_1 \\ a_5 &= 2a_4 + a_3 - 2a_2 \\ a_6 &= 2a_5 + a_4 - 2a_3 \\ &\vdots = \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots \\ a_{k+3} &= 2a_{k+2} + a_{k+1} - 2a_k \\ &\vdots = \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots \end{aligned}$$

We multiply each term of the equation ending with  $a_n$  by  $x^n$ , for all  $n \geq 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned} a_3x^0 &= 2a_2x^0 + a_1x^0 - 2a_0x^0 \\ a_4x^1 &= 2a_3x^1 + a_2x^1 - 2a_1x^1 \\ a_5x^2 &= 2a_4x^2 + a_3x^2 - 2a_2x^2 \\ a_6x^3 &= 2a_5x^3 + a_4x^3 - 2a_3x^3 \\ &\vdots = \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots \\ a_{k+3}x^k &= 2a_{k+2}x^k + a_{k+1}x^k - 2a_kx^k \\ &\vdots = \vdots \quad \quad \quad \vdots \end{aligned}$$

Now we add them all up collecting terms in columns

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+3}x^n = 2 \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+2}x^n \right] + \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1}x^n \right] - 2 \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_nx^n \right].$$

Since  $G(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(a_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$  we have

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+3}x^n = 2 \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+2}x^n \right] + \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1}x^n \right] - 2G(x).$$

And in fact if we concentrate on the sum on the left-hand side we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+3}x^n &= a_3x^0 + a_4x^1 + a_5x^2 + \cdots \\ &= \frac{x^3}{x^3} [a_3x^0 + a_4x^1 + a_5x^2 + \cdots] \\ &= \frac{1}{x^3} [a_3x^3 + a_4x^4 + a_5x^5 + \cdots] \\ &= \frac{1}{x^3} [-a_0x^0 - a_1x^1 - a_2x^2 + a_0x^0 + a_1x^1 + a_2x^2 + a_3x^3 + a_4x^4 + \cdots] \\ &= \frac{1}{x^3} [-a_0x^0 - a_1x^1 - a_2x^2 + G(x)] \end{aligned}$$

So, the left-hand side simplifies to



$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+3}x^n = \frac{1}{x^3}[-2 - 3x - 9x^2 + G(x)]$$

Similarly

$$2 \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+2}x^n \right] = \frac{2}{x^2}[-2 - 3x + G(x)]$$

and

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1}x^n = \frac{1}{x}[-2 + G(x)].$$

So, substitution yields

$$\frac{1}{x^3}[-2 - 3x - 9x^2 + G(x)] = \frac{2}{x^2}[-2 - 3x + G(x)] + \frac{1}{x}[-2 + G(x)] - 2G(x).$$

Now multiply through by  $x^3$  to get

$$-2 - 3x - 9x^2 + G(x) = 2x[-2 - 3x + G(x)] + x^2[-2 + G(x)] - 2x^3G(x)$$

Distribute products and collect all terms with  $G(x)$  on the left-hand side, then solve for  $G(x)$ .

$$-2 - 3x - 9x^2 + G(x) = -4x - 6x^2 + 2xG(x) + -2x^2 + x^2G(x) - 2x^3G(x)$$

$$G(x) - 2xG(x) - x^2G(x) + 2x^3G(x) = 2 + 3x + 9x^2 - 4x - 6x^2 - 2x^2$$

$$G(x)[1 - 2x - x^2 + 2x^3] = 2 - x + x^2$$

$$G(x) = \frac{2 - x + x^2}{1 - 2x - x^2 + 2x^3}.$$

In general, to solve

$$a_{n+k} = \left[ \sum_{i=1}^k c_i a_{n+k-i} \right] + f(n), \text{ for } n \geq 0$$

given the initial conditions  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{k-1}$ , we let  $G(x)$  be the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(a_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$  and  $H(x)$  be the ordinary generating function for the sequence  $(f(n))_{n=0}^{\infty}$ .

Then working as in the example we can write

$$\frac{1}{x^k} \left[ G(x) - \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} a_i x^i \right] = \frac{c_1}{x^{k-1}} \left[ G(x) - \sum_{i=0}^{k-2} a_i x^i \right] + \dots + \frac{c_{k-1}}{x} [G(x) - a_0] + c_k G(x) + H(x).$$

This expression can be solved for  $G(x)$  if we can find  $H(x)$ . Then partial fraction expansion will often yield  $(a_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$ .

Some remarks are in order. First, realize that this method still requires us to solve a system of linear equations of the same order as required by the method of characteristic roots. However, we have no choice in the equations generated when we employ the method of characteristic roots.

With the method of generating functions, we often get to select equations corresponding to eigenvalues of the linear system. These equations are therefore diagonal, or un-coupled. Also, the method of generating functions is more amenable to changes in the forcing term  $f(n)$ . So, if we are interested in stability, or the qualitative study of a particular kind of recurrence relation, the method of generating functions is the way to go. Finally, the method extends nicely to systems of linear recurrence relations.

Example: Let us solve  $h_{n+2} = 6h_{n+1} - 9h_n + 2(n+2)$ , for  $n \geq 0$  given  $h_0 = 1$ , and  $h_1 = 0$ , by the method of generating functions.

Let  $H(x)$  generate  $(h_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} h_{n+2}x^n &= 6 \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} h_{n+1}x^n \right] - 9 \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} h_n x^n \right] + 2 \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (n+2)x^n \right] \\ \frac{1}{x^2} [-1 + H(x)] &= \frac{6}{x} [-1 + H(x)] - 9H(x) + \frac{2}{x^2} \left[ -0x^0 - 1x^1 + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} nx^n \right] \\ -1 + H(x) &= -6x + 6xH(x) - 9x^2H(x) - 2x + \frac{2x}{(1-x)^2} \\ H(x)[1 - 6x + 9x^2] &= 1 - 8x + \frac{2x}{(1-x)^2} \\ H(x)[1 - 6x + 9x^2] &= \frac{1 - 8x + 17x^2 - 8x^3}{(1-x)^2} \\ H(x) &= \frac{1 - 8x + 17x^2 - 8x^3}{(1-3x)^2(1-x)^2}\end{aligned}$$

For the partial fraction expansion

$$H(x) = \frac{1 - 8x + 17x^2 - 8x^3}{(1-3x)^2(1-x)^2} = \frac{A}{1-x} + \frac{B}{(1-x)^2} + \frac{C}{1-3x} + \frac{D}{(1-3x)^2}$$

$$1 - 8x + 17x^2 - 8x^3 = A(1-x)(1-3x)^2 + B(1-3x)^2 + C(1-x)^2(1-3x) + D(1-x)^2$$

When  $x = 1$ ,  $1 - 8x + 17x^2 - 8x^3 = 2$ , while the right-hand side reduces to  $B(-2)^2 = 4B$ , so  $B = 1/2$ .

When  $x = 1/3$ ,  $1 - 8x + 17x^2 - 8x^3 = -2/27$ , while the right-hand side reduces to

$$D \left( \frac{2}{3} \right)^2 = \frac{4D}{9}, \text{ so } D = -1/6.$$

Having exhausted the eigenvalues, we choose  $x = 0$ , which generates the equation  $1 = A + B + C + D$ , so  $A + C = 2/3$ .

Secondly, we set  $x = -1$  which gives  $34 = 32A + 16B + 16C + 4D$ , which becomes  $2A + C = 5/3$ .

We solve these two linear equations for  $A = 1$ , and  $C = -1/3$ . Thus

$$H(x) = \frac{1 - 8x + 17x^2 - 8x^3}{(1 - 3x)^2(1 - x)^2} = \frac{1}{1 - x} + \frac{1/2}{(1 - x)^2} + \frac{-1/3}{1 - 3x} + \frac{-1/6}{(1 - 3x)^2}.$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( 1^n + \frac{1}{2}(n+1)1^n - \frac{1}{3}3^n - \frac{1}{6}(n+1)3^n \right) x^n$$

So

$$\begin{aligned} h_n &= 1 + \frac{1}{2}(n+1) - \frac{1}{3}3^n - \frac{1}{6}(n+1)3^n \\ &= \frac{3}{2} + \frac{n}{2} - 3^{n-1} - \frac{n}{2}3^{n-1} - \frac{1}{2}3^{n-1} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}[3 + n - 3^n - n3^{n-1}], \text{ for } n \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Example: As an example of using generating functions to solve a system of linear recurrence relations, let us consider the example from the end of Section 3.5.

$$\begin{aligned} a_n + b_n + c_n + d_n &= 3^n \\ a_n + b_n + c_n &= a_{n+1} \\ a_n + b_n + d_n &= b_{n+1} \\ a_n + c_n + d_n &= c_{n+1} \end{aligned}$$

where the initial conditions are  $a_0 = c_0 = d_0 = 0$ , and  $b_0 = 1$ .

Solve the first equation for  $d_n$  in terms of  $3^n$  and the other terms, and substitute to get

$$\begin{aligned} a_n + b_n + c_n &= a_{n+1} \\ 3^n - c_n &= b_{n+1} \\ 3^n - b_n &= c_{n+1} \end{aligned}$$

Converting to generating functions gives

$$\begin{aligned} A(x) + B(x) + C(x) &= \frac{1}{x}[A(x) - a_0] \\ \frac{1}{1 - 3x} - C(x) &= \frac{1}{x}[B(x) - b_0] \\ \frac{1}{1 - 3x} - B(x) &= \frac{1}{x}[C(x) - c_0] \end{aligned}$$

Clear denominators and input the initial conditions  $a_0 = c_0 = 0$ , and  $b_0 = 1$

$$\begin{aligned} xA(x) + xB(x) + xC(x) &= A(x) \\ \frac{x}{1-3x} - xC(x) &= B(x) - 1 \\ \frac{x}{1-3x} - xB(x) &= C(x) \end{aligned}$$

From the first equation we have  $(1-x)A(x) = x[B(x) + C(x)]$ , so we can find  $A(x)$  if we can find  $B(x)$  and  $C(x)$ .

Substitute the third equation into the second equation to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} B(x) &= 1 + \frac{x}{1-3x} - xC(x) \\ &= \frac{1-3x+x}{1-3x} - x \left[ \frac{x}{1-3x} - xB(x) \right] \\ &= \frac{1-2x-x^2}{1-3x} + x^2B(x) \end{aligned}$$

So

$$B(x) = \frac{1-2x-x^2}{(1-3x)(1-x)(1+x)} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{1-x} + \frac{\frac{1}{4}}{1+x} + \frac{\frac{1}{4}}{1-3x}.$$

Which means

$$b_n = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4}(-1)^n + \frac{1}{4}3^n, \text{ for } n \geq 0.$$

Next,

$$\begin{aligned} C(x) &= \frac{x}{1-3x} - xB(x) = \frac{x(1-x^2) - (x-2x^2-x^3)}{(1-3x)(1-x^2)} = \frac{2x^2}{(1-3x)(1-x)(1+x)} \\ &= -\frac{\frac{1}{2}}{1-x} + \frac{\frac{1}{4}}{1+x} + \frac{\frac{1}{4}}{1-3x}. \end{aligned}$$

So

$$c_n = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4}(-1)^n + \frac{1}{4}3^n, \text{ for } n \geq 0.$$

Now

$$B(x) + C(x) = \frac{1-2x-x^2+2x^2}{(1-3x)(1-x)(1+x)} = \frac{(1-x)^2}{(1-3x)(1-x)(1+x)} = \frac{1-x}{(1-3x)(1+x)}.$$

So

$$A(x) = \frac{x}{1-x} [B(x) + C(x)] = \frac{x}{(1-3x)(1+x)} = \frac{\frac{1}{4}}{1-3x} - \frac{\frac{1}{4}}{1+x}.$$

Consequently

$$a_n = \frac{1}{4} [3^n - (-1)^n], \text{ for } n \geq 0.$$

By symmetry we see  $d_n = a_n$  for all  $n \geq 0$ .

### Chapter 3 Exercises

1. For each of the following functions, find its Maclaurin expansion by computing the derivatives  $f^{(k)}(0)$ .
  - a)  $f(x) = \cos x$
  - b)  $f(x) = e^{2x}$
  - c)  $f(x) = \sin 3x$
  - d)  $f(x) = x + e^x$
  - e)  $f(x) = xe^x$
  - f)  $f(x) = \ln(1 + 5x)$
  
2. For each of the following functions use known Maclaurin expansions to find the Maclaurin expansion.
  - a)  $f(x) = x^2 + \frac{1}{1-x}$
  - b)  $f(x) = \frac{x^3}{1-x}$
  - c)  $f(x) = \sin x^3$
  - d)  $f(x) = \frac{1}{(x-1)^3}$
  - e)  $f(x) = 7e^x + e^{8x}$
  - f)  $f(x) = \ln(1 + 3x)$
  - g)  $f(x) = x^5 \sin(x^2)$
  - h)  $f(x) = \frac{1}{1-2x} - e^x$
  
3. For the following sequences indexed by  $0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$  find the ordinary generating function. Simplify if possible.
  - a)  $(1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, \dots)$
  - b)  $(1, 0, 2, 3, 4, 0, 0, 0, 0, \dots)$
  - c)  $(3, 3, 3, 3, 3, \dots)$
  - d)  $(1, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, \dots)$
  - e)  $(0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, \dots)$
  - f)  $(0, 0, 4, 4, 4, 4, \dots)$
  - g)  $(1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 1, 1, 1, \dots)$
  - h)  $\left(\frac{2}{k!}\right)_{k=0}^{\infty}$
  - i)  $\left(\frac{2^k}{k!}\right)_{k=0}^{\infty}$
  - j)  $\left(0, 0, \frac{1}{2!}, \frac{1}{3!}, \frac{1}{4!}, \frac{1}{5!}, \dots\right)$
  - k)  $\left(1, -1, \frac{1}{2!}, \frac{1}{3!}, \frac{1}{4!}, \frac{1}{5!}, \dots\right)$
  - l)  $(1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, \dots)$
  - m)  $\left(2, 0, \frac{-2}{3!}, 0, \frac{2}{5!}, 0, \frac{-2}{7!}, 0, \frac{2}{9!}, 0, \frac{-2}{11!}, \dots\right)$
  - i)  $\left(3, \frac{-3}{2}, \frac{3}{3}, \frac{-3}{4}, \frac{3}{5}, \dots\right)$

4. Find the sequence whose ordinary generating function is given.
  - a)  $f(x) = (x + 5)^2$
  - b)  $f(x) = (1 + x)^4$
  - c)  $f(x) = \frac{x^5}{1-x}$
  - d)  $f(x) = \frac{1}{1-3x}$
  - e)  $f(x) = \frac{1}{1+8x}$
  - f)  $f(x) = e^{4x}$
  - g)  $f(x) = 1 + \frac{1}{1-x}$
  - h)  $f(x) = 1 + e^x$
  - i)  $f(x) = xe^x$
  - j)  $f(x) = x^3 + x^4 + e^x$
  - k)  $f(x) = \frac{1}{1-x^2}$
  - l)  $f(x) = e^{-2x}$
  - m)  $f(x) = \sin 3x$
  - n)  $f(x) = \frac{1}{1+x^2}$
  - o)  $f(x) = \frac{1}{(1+x)^2}$
  - p)  $f(x) = \frac{1}{1-3x} + \frac{4x}{1-x}$
  - q)  $f(x) = \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2}$
  
5. Find a simple expression for the ordinary generating function for each sequence.
  - a)  $a_k = k + 2$
  - b)  $a_k = 7k$
  - c)  $a_k = k^2$
  - d)  $a_k = k(k + 1)$
  - e)  $a_k = \frac{k+1}{k!}$
  
6. In each of the following set up the appropriate generating function. DO NOT CALCULATE AN ANSWER, BUT INDICATE WHAT YOU ARE LOOKING FOR eg the coefficient of  $x^9$ .
  - a) An athletics director wants to pick at least 3 small college teams as football opponents for a particular season, at least 3 teams from medium-sized colleges, and at least 2 large-college teams. She has limited the choice to 7 small college teams, 6 medium-sized college teams, and 4 teams from large colleges. In how many ways can she select 11 opponents assuming that she is not distinguishing 2 teams from a particular sized college as different?
  - b) In how many ways can 8 binary digits be selected if each must be selected an even number of times?
  - c) How many ways are there to choose 10 voters from a group of 5 republicans, 5 democrats and 7 independents, if we want at least 3 independents and any two voters of the same political persuasion are considered indistinguishable?

- d) A Geiger counter records the impact of five different kinds of radioactive particles over a period of five minutes. How many ways are there to obtain a count of 20?
  - e) In checking the work of a proofreader we look for 4 types of proofreading errors. In how many ways can we find 40 errors?
  - f) How many ways are there to distribute 15 identical balls into 10 distinguishable cells?
  - g) Repeat f) if no cell may be empty.
  - h) How many solutions in integers are there to  $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 12$ , where  $0 \leq x_i \leq 6$ ?
7. Use Newton's Binomial Theorem to find the coefficient of  $x^4$  in the expansion of
    - a)  $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{1+x}$
    - b)  $f(x) = (1+x)^{-2}$
    - c)  $f(x) = (1-x)^{-5}$
    - d)  $f(x) = (1+4x)^{1/2}$
  8. Find the coefficient of  $x^7$  in the expansion of
    - a)  $f(x) = (1-x)^{-6}x^4$
    - b)  $f(x) = (1-x)^{-4}x^{11}$
    - c)  $f(x) = (1+x)^{1/2}x^3$
  9. If  $f(x) = (1+x)^{1/3}$  is the ordinary generating function for  $(a_k)_{k=0}^{\infty}$ , find  $a_k$ .
  10. Each of the following functions is the exponential generating function for a sequence  $(a_k)_{k=0}^{\infty}$ . Find the sequence.
    - a)  $f(x) = 3 + 3x + 3x^2 + 3x^3 + \dots$
    - b)  $f(x) = \frac{1}{1-x}$
    - c)  $f(x) = x^2 + 3x$
    - d)  $f(x) = e^{6x}$
    - e)  $f(x) = e^x + e^{4x}$
    - f)  $f(x) = (1+x^2)^n$
  11. Another mythical tale tells of magical pairs of rabbits. The pairs behave in the following fashion. Any newborn pair of rabbits are one male and one female. A pair mates for life, and inbreeding doesn't introduce any problems. Once a pair is two months old, they reproduce exactly one new pair each month. Let  $f_n$  denote the number of pairs of rabbits after  $n$  months. Suppose that  $f_0 = 0$  and a newborn pair is given as a gift, so  $f_1 = 1$ . Find a recurrence relation for  $f_n$ .
  12. For each of the following sequences find a recurrence relation satisfied by the sequence. Include a sufficient number of initial conditions to specify the sequence.
    - a)  $a_n = 2n + 2, n \geq 0$
    - b)  $a_n = 2 \cdot 3^n, n \geq 1$
    - c)  $a_n = n^2, n \geq 0$
    - d)  $a_n = n + (-1)^n, n \geq 0$



13. Find a recurrence relation for the number of binary strings of length  $n$  which do not contain a pair of consecutive zeroes.
14. Find a recurrence relation for the number of trinary strings of length  $n$  which contain a pair of consecutive zeroes.
15. Find a recurrence relation for the number of binary strings of length  $n$  which do not contain the substring 01. Try again with 010 in place of 01.
16. A codeword over  $\{0,1,2\}$  is considered legitimate if and only if there is an even number of 0's and an odd number of 1's. Find simultaneous recurrence relations from which it is possible to compute the number of legitimate codewords of length  $n$ .
17. Suppose that we have stamps of denominations 4,6, and 10 cents each in unlimited supply. Let  $f(n)$  be the number of ways to make  $n$  cents postage assuming the ordering of the stamps used matters. So, a six-cent stamp followed by a four-cent stamp is different from a four-cent stamp followed by a six-cent stamp. Find a recurrence relation for  $f(n)$ . Check your recurrence by computing  $f(14)$  and enumerating all possible ways to make fourteen cents postage.
18. Find the characteristic equation of each of the following recursive formulas.
  - a)  $a_n = 2a_{n-1} - a_{n-2}$
  - b)  $b_k = 10b_{k-1} - 16b_{k-2}$
  - c)  $c_n = 3c_{n-1} + 12c_{n-2} - 18c_{n-3}$
  - d)  $d_n = 8d_{n-4} + 16d_{n-5}$
  - e)  $e_k = e_{k-2}$
  - f)  $f_{n+1} = -f_n + 2f_{n-1}$
  - g)  $g_n = 15g_{n-1} + 12g_{n-2} + 11g_{n-3} - 33g_{n-8}$
  - h)  $h_n = 4h_{n-2}$
  - i)  $i_n = 6i_{n-1} - 11i_{n-2} + 6i_{n-3}$
  - j)  $j_n = 2j_{n-1} + j_{n-2} - 2j_{n-3}$
19. Find the characteristic roots of each recurrence from exercise 18.
20. Solve the recurrence relations using the method of characteristic roots.
  - a)  $a_0 = 1, a_1 = 6$  and  $a_n = 6a_{n-1} - 9a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq 2$ .
  - b)  $a_0 = 3, a_1 = 6$  and  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 6a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq 2$ .
  - c)  $a_2 = 5, a_3 = 13$  and  $a_n = 7a_{n-1} - 10a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq 4$ .
  - d)  $a_0 = 6, a_1 = -3$  and  $a_n = -4a_{n-1} + 5a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq 2$ .
  - e)  $a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1$  and  $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq 2$ .
  - f)  $a_0 = 2, a_1 = 5, a_2 = 15$ , and  $a_n = 6a_{n-1} - 11a_{n-2} + 6a_{n-3}$ , for  $n \geq 3$ .

21. Use generating functions to solve each of the recurrences.
- $a_n = 2a_{n-1} - a_{n-2} + 2^{n-2}, n \geq 2$ , where  $a_0 = 3, a_1 = 5$
  - $b_k = 10b_{k-1} - 16b_{k-2}, k \geq 2$ , where  $b_0 = 0, b_1 = 1$
  - $c_m = -c_{m-1} + 2c_{m-2}, m \geq 2$ , where  $c_0 = c_1 = 1$
  - $d_n = 6d_{n-1} - 11d_{n-2} + 6d_{n-3}$ , where  $d_0 = 0, d_1 = 1$  and  $d_2 = 2$ .
22. Find an ordinary generating function for  $C_{n+1} = 2nC_n + 2C_n + 2, n \geq 0$ , where  $C_0 = 1$ . Then find an exponential generating function for the same recurrence.
23. In each case suppose that  $G(x)$  is the ordinary generating function for  $(a_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$ . Find  $a_n$ .
- $G(x) = \frac{1}{(1-2x)(1-4x)}$
  - $G(x) = \frac{2x+1}{(1-3x)(1-4x)}$
  - $G(x) = \frac{x^2}{(1-4x)(1-5x)(1-6x)}$
  - $G(x) = \frac{1}{8x^2-6x+1}$
  - $G(x) = \frac{x}{x^2-3x+2}$
  - $G(x) = \frac{1}{6x^3-5x^2+x}$
  - $G(x) = \frac{2-3x}{(1-x)^2(1-2x)}$

24. Solve the system of linear recurrences where  $n \geq 1$ .

$$a_{n+1} = a_n + b_n + c_n$$

$$b_{n+1} = 4^n - c_n$$

$$c_{n+1} = 4^n - b_n$$

subject to the initial conditions  $a_1 = b_1 = c_1 = 1$ .

## **Chapter Summary/Key Takeaways**

Basic counting is not always sufficient. In this chapter we saw how generating functions were a construct that allowed us to solve some problems more easily – provided we can perform some algebra. This includes the use of recursion for counting. And while we can solve many recurrence relations without generating functions, using the method of generating functions has certain advantages.

## Chapter Four: Pólya Counting

Abstract algebra, or modern algebra, is an area of mathematics where one studies general algebraic structures. In contrast the algebra that one studies in, for example, college algebra is very specific and concrete - dealing (almost) exclusively with algebra using real or complex number systems.

Basic counting requires only basic algebra. Intermediate counting requires algebra which is a bit more generalized, namely the formal manipulation of power series. It therefore makes sense that advanced counting requires abstract algebra.

The roots of the counting techniques we study are in the work Burnside and Frobenius. George Pólya is credited with the most fundamental theorem pertinent to this approach to counting. Thus, this type of counting is named after him.

We start with a large collection of objects. We then decide upon a framework to help us classify the objects (uniquely) by various types. The goal is to develop a theory to determine the number of distinct types. The theory we develop uses group theory in deciding which objects are of the same type.

We therefore begin with a section devoted to developing the notion of when two objects are of the same type. This is followed by some basic group theory in the second section. The Fundamental Lemma in section three is often attributed to Burnside. There are arguments that it should be attributed elsewhere. We will therefore not specifically attribute it to him. Still if the student should find themselves reading an older text, they'll recognize the lemma by the moniker ``Burnside's Lemma".

## Section 1: Equivalence Relations

Given a set,  $A$ , to classify its members into distinct types, the classification scheme must meet certain criteria. First, for any element of the set there should be a class that the element fits into. Second, no element should fall into two classes simultaneously. Otherwise, we cannot claim that the types actually form a classification of the elements. Finally, in part because we want to be able to determine the number of distinct classes, we shall want to require that no class is empty. The point is that we could arbitrarily define empty classes. But then we would not really be counting the number of necessary classes.

For such a classification scheme the distinct classes  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_r$  form a partition of the set  $A$ . A partition of a set,  $A$ , is a collection of pairwise-disjoint, non-empty subsets, whose union is  $A$ .

Given a partition of  $A$  into the parts  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_r$  we can relate two elements of  $A$  when they are in the same part. This relation,  $R \subseteq A \times A$ , has the property that it is reflexive, because every element of  $A$  is in some part. The relation  $R$  is also symmetric, since if  $a$  and  $b$  are in the same part, so are  $b$  and  $a$ . Finally, the relation  $R$  is transitive, since if  $a$  and  $b$  are in the same part  $C_i$ , and  $b$  and  $c$  are in the same part  $C_j$ , then  $b \in C_i \cap C_j$ . From the fact that the parts are pairwise disjoint we conclude that  $C_i = C_j$ . Whence  $a$  and  $c$  are in the same part. So, a partition of a set  $A$  defines an equivalence relation on the set  $A$ .

Conversely, given an equivalence relation  $R$  on  $A$  we can define the equivalence class of  $a \in A$ , denoted by  $[a]$ , as the set of all elements of  $A$  in the relation  $R$  with  $a$ .

**Theorem 4.1:** *If  $R$  is an equivalence relation on  $A$ , and  $a, b \in A$ , then  $[a] \cap [b] \neq \emptyset$  implies that  $[a] = [b]$ .*

Proof: Let  $c \in [a] \cap [b]$ . Then  $(a, c), (b, c) \in R$ . Since  $R$  is symmetric  $(a, c), (c, b) \in R$ . Because  $R$  is transitive we deduce that  $(a, b) \in R$ . So now if  $d \in [a]$ , we know  $(b, a)$  and  $(a, d)$  are in  $R$ . Therefore  $(b, d) \in R$ , since  $R$  is transitive. But this means  $d \in [b]$ . Thus  $[a] \subseteq [b]$ . The result follows by appealing to symmetry of argument. ■

As a corollary we draw that the distinct equivalence classes of an equivalence relation  $R$  on a set  $A$  form a partition of the set  $A$ .

Example: A standard deck of cards contains 52 cards. Each card has a rank 2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9, 10,  $J$  = Jack,  $Q$  = Queen,  $K$  = King, or  $A$  = Ace. Each card also has a suit  $\heartsuit, \spadesuit, \clubsuit$ , or  $\diamondsuit$ .

So, we could choose to classify the set of cards in a standard deck by considering two cards "the same" if they had the same suit. In this case there would be four distinct types of objects.

Of course, we might also define two cards to be "the same" if they were of the same rank. Now there would be thirteen distinct types of objects.

We sometimes might need to use a subscript  $[a]_R$  to distinguish the equivalence class of an element  $a$  with respect to  $R$  as opposed to  $[a]_T$  which would denote the equivalence class of  $a$  with respect to  $T$ .

Example: For a positive integer  $m$ , the relation  $\text{mod } m$  on  $\mathbb{Z}$  defined by  $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$  if and only if  $m$  divides  $a - b$  is an equivalence relation. The distinct equivalence classes are standardly labelled by  $0, 1, 2, \dots, m - 1$ .

Example: Let  $A$  be the non-proper colorings of  $C_4$  using 2 colors. Partition the set  $A$  into six parts as in Figure 4.1. The associated equivalence relation cannot be nicely defined without the tools of Section 4.2.

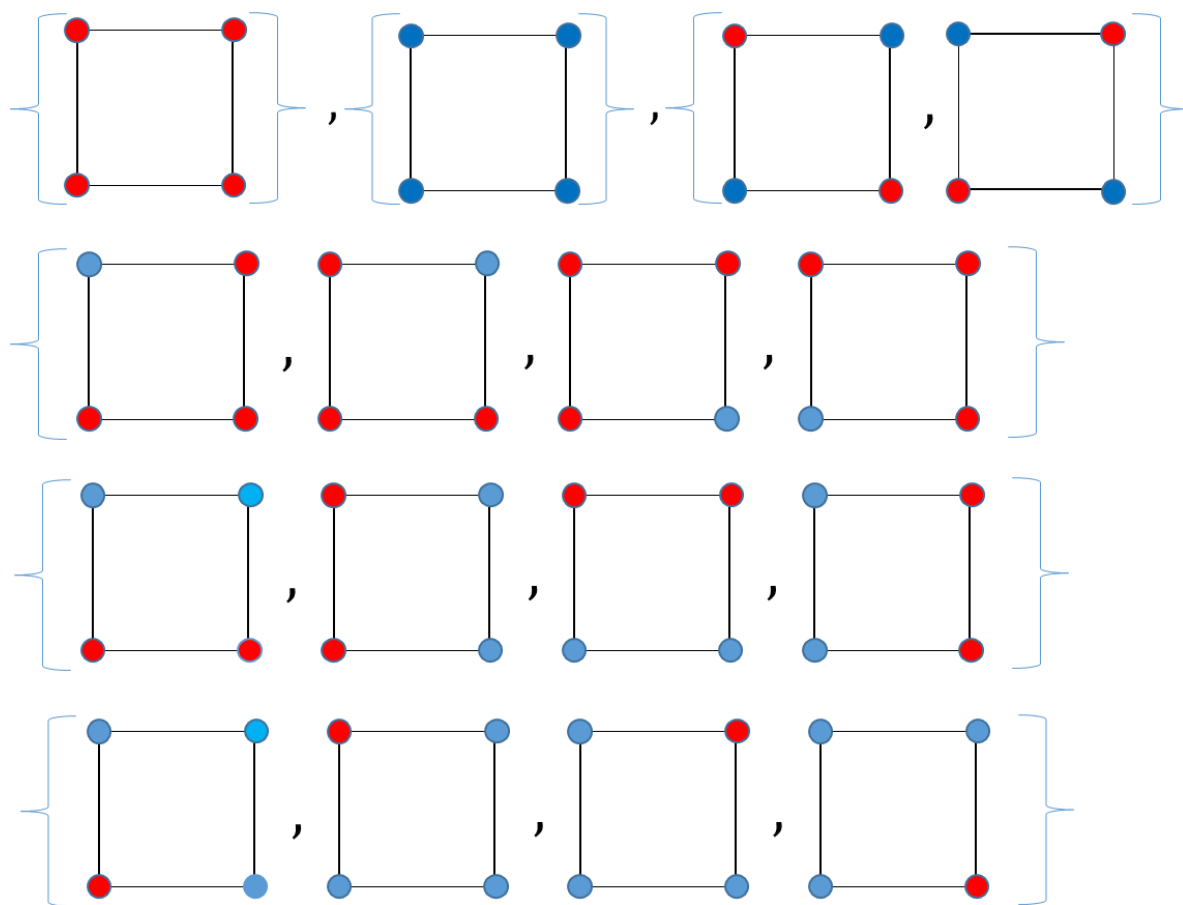


Figure 4.1: A partition of the nonproper 2-colorings of the 4-cycle

## Section 2: Permutation Groups

A binary operation on a set  $S$  is a function from  $S \times S$  into  $S$ . Standard examples are addition and multiplication. We will use multiplicative notation. So, the image of  $(g, h)$  is written  $gh$ .

A group is a set with a binary operation which is associative, that is  $a(bc) = (ab)c$  for all  $a, b, c, \in G$ , has identity, meaning there exists  $e \in G$  with  $eg = g = ge$  for all  $g \in G$ , and inverses, which means for each  $g \in G$  there is  $h \in G$ , denoted  $g^{-1}$ , with  $gh = e = hg$ . If, in

addition, the operation is commutative ( $ab = ba$  for all  $a, b \in G$ ) we call the group Abelian. Denote the cardinality of  $G$  by  $|G|$ . This is called the order of  $G$ .

Example:  $\mathbb{Z}, +$ . Here the identity is additive  $0 + n = n + 0 = n$ . Inverses are also additive:

$$n + (-n) = (-n) + n = 0.$$

Example:  $\mathbb{R}^* = \mathbb{R} - \{0\}, \cdot$ . Here we suppress the symbol  $\cdot$  and use juxtaposition. The identity is 1, and the inverse of  $x$  is the reciprocal  $x^{-1} = 1/x$ .

Notice that in a group we have the cancellation property: For  $a, b, c \in G$  a group,  $ac = ab$  implies  $c = b$ .

Super – Example: Let  $A$  be a set and put  $Sym(A) = \{f: A \rightarrow A | f \text{ is bijective}\}$ . Then  $Sym(A)$  is a group with operation being composition of functions. The identity is the identity function on  $A$  denoted by  $1_A$ . The inverse of  $f \in Sym(A)$  is the inverse function  $f^{-1} \in Sym(A)$ .

If  $|A| = |B| = n < \infty$ , there is a bijective function  $f: A \rightarrow B$ . Then  $Sym(A) \cong Sym(B)$  where  $\pi \in Sym(A)$  corresponds to  $f\pi f^{-1} \in Sym(B)$ . One must check the correspondence is one-to-one, onto and preserves operations. The map  $\pi \mapsto f\pi f^{-1}$  is a group isomorphism. Which of course behaves somewhat like a graph isomorphism. The only difference is graph isomorphisms preserve adjacency and group isomorphisms preserve operation.

Standardly, if  $|A| = n$ , we therefore take  $A = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$  and denote  $Sym(A)$  by  $S_n$ , the symmetric group on  $n$  letters. This is a permutation group because its elements are  $n$  – permutations of an  $n$  – set.

Elements of  $S_n$  may be described by two-row tables, T-tables, bipartite graphs, etc.

For computational ease and typesetting-efficiency we use cycle notation.  $(a_1 a_2 \dots a_m)$  denotes the permutation on  $n$  letters where  $a_i$  gets mapped to  $a_{i+1}$ , with subscripts computed modulo  $m$ , and where any letter not in  $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m\}$  is fixed. This is a rather important convention. The positive integer  $m$  is called the length of the cycle.

Two permutations,  $\pi$  and  $\rho$  are disjoint, if  $\pi(a) \neq a$  implies  $\rho(a) = a$  and vice versa.

**Theorem 4.2:** Every nonidentity permutation  $\pi \in S_n$  can be written (uniquely up to order) as a product of disjoint cycles.

Sketch of proof: The proof uses the second form of mathematical induction. It is analogous to the standard proof of the Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic. In the inductive step we pick  $x$  with  $\pi(x) \neq x$ . Form the cycle  $\gamma = (x, \pi(x), \pi^2(x), \dots, \pi^{m-1}(x))$  (so  $m$  is the least positive integer with  $\pi^m(x) = x$ ). If  $\pi = \gamma$ , we're done. Otherwise, since  $\gamma$  fixes any element of

$$\{1, 2, \dots, n\} - \{x, \pi(x), \dots, \pi^{m-1}(x)\},$$

$\pi\gamma^{-1}$  fixes  $\{x, \pi(x), \dots, \pi^{m-1}(x)\}$  and can therefore be considered as an element of  $S_{n-m}$ .

Induction kicks in and we're done. ■

The order of the cycles is not fixed in the previous theorem because of the following fact.

**Lemma 4.3:** *If  $\gamma$  and  $\pi$  are disjoint, then  $\gamma\pi = \pi\gamma$ .*

Sketch of proof: Check that the two compositions have the same value at each element  $i$  of the domain  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . The three cases to consider are i)  $\gamma(i) \neq i$ , ii)  $\pi(i) \neq i$  and iii)  $\gamma(i) = i = \pi(i)$ . ■

Notice that the converse is not true. Any non-identity permutation will commute with its powers but will not be disjoint with them.

A subgroup of a group is a subset which is also a group. We write  $H \leq G$  to mean  $H$  is a subgroup of  $G$ .

**Theorem 4.4:** (Subgroup Criterion) *Let  $\emptyset \neq H \subseteq G$ , where  $G$  is a group.  $H$  is a subgroup of  $G$  if and only if  $ab^{-1} \in H$  for all  $a, b \in H$ .*

Proof: The forward implication is trivial.

For the converse, since  $H \neq \emptyset$ , there is  $a \in H$ . Hence  $e = aa^{-1} \in H$ . And if  $b \in H$ ,  $b^{-1} = eb^{-1} \in H$ .  $H$  inherits associativity from  $G$ . ■

**Theorem 4.5:** (Subgroup Criterion for Finite Subsets) *Let  $\emptyset \neq H \subseteq G$ , where  $G$  is a group and  $|H| = n < \infty$ . Then  $H$  is a subgroup of  $G$  if and only if  $ab \in H$  for all  $a, b \in H$ .*

When  $ab \in H$  for all  $a, b \in H$ , we say that  $H$  is closed with respect to the operation.

Proof: The forward implication is trivial.

Let  $a \in H$ . Among the elements  $a, a^2, a^3, \dots, a^n, a^{n+1}$ , all must be in  $H$  by closure. Since  $|H| = n$ , these elements cannot all be distinct. Therefore, there exists superscripts  $i$  and  $j$  with  $j > i$  so that  $a^j = a^i$ . Therefore  $a^{j-i} = e \in H$  by the cancellation law. In fact we see that  $a^{-1} = a^{j-i-1}$ . So for  $a, b \in H$ ,  $a, b^{-1} \in H$ . By closure  $ab^{-1} \in H$ . The conclusion now follows by Theorem 4.4. ■

Notice that for a cycle  $\gamma$  of length  $m$  the natural number  $m$  is the smallest positive integer for which  $\gamma^m = e$ . We say that the cycle  $\gamma$  has order  $m$ . Since the set  $\{e, \gamma, \gamma^2, \dots, \gamma^{m-1}\}$  of distinct powers of  $\gamma$  is a group of order  $m$ , this definition agrees nicely with the previous one. We write  $\langle \gamma \rangle = \{e, \gamma, \gamma^2, \dots, \gamma^{m-1}\}$  for the subgroup of  $S_n$  generated by  $\gamma$ . We also use the notation  $o(\gamma) = m$ .

Example:  $\langle (1234) \rangle = \{e, (1234), (13)(24), (1432)\}$ . Also  $o((1234)) = 4$ .

For permutations that commute, meaning  $\gamma\pi = \pi\gamma$ , one can prove by induction that  $(\gamma\pi)^n = \gamma^n\pi^n$ .



Together with the fact that the order (as a group element) of an  $m$ –cycle is  $m$  when  $\gamma$  and  $\pi$  commute  $o(\gamma\pi) = \text{lcm}(o(\gamma), o(\pi))$ . Thus, if we write a permutation as a product of disjoint cycles, we can easily compute its order.

When  $\pi$  is the product of disjoint cycles which includes exactly  $e_a$  cycles of length  $a > 0$ , we define the type of  $\pi$  to be the finite product

$$\text{type}(\pi) = \prod_{a \in \mathbb{N}} a^{e_a} = \prod_{a=1}^n a^{e_a}.$$

We extend this definition to the identity by setting  $\text{type}(e) = 1$ . The order of  $\pi$  as a group element is the least common multiple of lengths  $a$ , where  $e_a > 0$ .

### Section 3: Group Actions

If  $S$  is a set and  $G$  is a group,  $G$  acts on  $S$  if there is a map  $*$ :  $G \times S \rightarrow S$  so that

1.  $g_1 * (g_2 * s) = (g_1 g_2) * s$ .
2.  $e * s = s$  for all  $s \in S$ .

Example: Every group acts on itself by left multiplication.

Remark: We sometimes will find it useful to use functional notation for a group action. So instead of writing  $g * s$  we will write  $g(s)$ .

If  $G$  acts on  $S$  define the relation  $\sim$  on  $S$  by  $x \sim y$  iff there exists  $g \in G$  with  $g * x = y$ .

**Theorem 4.6:** *The relation  $\sim$  is an equivalence relation on  $G$ .*

Proof: For  $s \in S$ ,  $s \sim s$  since  $e * s = s$ . Therefore  $\sim$  is reflexive.

If  $x \sim y$ , there is  $g \in G$  so that  $g * x = y$ . Then

$$g^{-1} * y = g^{-1} * (g * x) = (g^{-1}g) * x = e * x = x.$$

Thus,  $y \sim x$ , and  $\sim$  is symmetric.

If  $x \sim y$  and  $y \sim z$ , then there are  $g, h \in G$  with  $g * x = y$ , and  $h * y = z$ . So

$$(hg) * x = h * (g * x) = h * y = z.$$

Hence  $\sim$  is transitive. ■

Example:  $\langle (1234) \rangle$  acts on the 2–colored  $C_4$ 's when the vertices of the graph are labelled in order 1, 2, 3 and 4.

Example:  $\{e, \text{reverse}\}$  acts on the set of open necklaces of length  $k$ .

General example: Every group  $G$  acts on itself by conjugation. Here  $g * h = ghg^{-1}$ . The equivalence classes are the conjugacy classes.

When a group  $G$  acts on a set  $S$  and  $x \in S$ , the orbit of  $x$  under  $G$  is defined as

$$G * x = \{g * x | g \in G\}.$$

The set  $G_x = \{g \in G | g * x = x\}$  is the stabilizer of  $x$  in  $G$ . It is straightforward to prove

**Lemma 4.7:**  $G_x \leq G$ .

**Theorem 4.8:** When a group  $G$  acts on a set  $S$  and  $a \in S$ , then  $|G| = |G * a| \cdot |G_a|$ .

Proof: Suppose that  $G * a = \{b_1, b_2, \dots, b_r\}$ , where the  $b_i$ 's are all distinct. Then there is an  $r$ -subset  $P = \{\pi_1, \pi_2, \dots, \pi_r\}$  of  $G$  with  $\pi_i * a = b_i, i = 1, 2, \dots, r$ . The  $\pi_i$ 's are distinct since the elements  $\pi_i * a$  are distinct.

Now for  $\gamma \in G$ , if  $\gamma * a = b_k = \pi_k * a$ , then  $\pi_k^{-1} * \gamma * a = a$ . So,  $\pi_k^{-1} \gamma \in G_a$ . Let us say that  $\pi_k^{-1} \gamma = \sigma \in G_a$ . Then  $\gamma = \pi_k \sigma = (\pi_k \pi_k^{-1}) \gamma = \pi_k (\pi_k^{-1} \gamma) = \pi_k \sigma$ . Thus, every element of  $G$  can be written as something in  $P$  times something in  $G_a$ . Therefore  $|G| \leq |P| |G_a| = |G * a| |G_a|$ .

To show equality suppose that  $\gamma = \pi_k \sigma = \pi_m \tau$ , where  $\pi_k, \pi_m \in P$  and  $\sigma, \tau \in G_a$ . Thus  $(\pi_k \sigma) * a = \pi_k * \sigma * a = \pi_k * a = b_k$ , while  $\pi_m \tau * a = \pi_m * a = b_m$ .

So,  $b_k = b_m$ , and thus  $\pi_k = \pi_m$ . By the cancellation property  $\sigma = \tau$ . ■

When  $G$  is finite, the theorem gives a useful divisibility condition.

General Example: If  $H \leq G$ , for any  $g \in G$ ,  $gH = \{gh | h \in H\}$  is the left coset of  $H$  in  $G$  labelled by  $g$ . The group  $G$  acts on  $S = \{gH | g \in G\}$ , the set of left cosets of  $H$  in  $G$ , by left multiplication i.e.  $g * xH = gxH$ . In this case  $G_H = H$  (i.e.  $aH = H$  if and only if  $a \in H$ ). In general,  $aH = bH$  if and only if  $ab^{-1} \in H$ . We denote the number of distinct left cosets of  $H$  in  $G$  by  $[G:H]$  and call it the index of  $H$  in  $G$ .

**Corollary 4.9:** (Lagrange's Theorem) When  $G$  is a group and  $H \leq G$ , then  $|G| = |H| \cdot [G:H]$ .

If  $G$  acts on  $S$  and there is  $s \in S$  so that  $G * s = S$ , then  $G$  acts transitively on  $S$ . In the previous general example  $G$  acts transitively on the left cosets of  $H$  by left multiplication. It happens that  $G$  also acts transitively on the right cosets of  $H$  in  $G$ , by  $g * Hk = Hkg$ . So Lagrange's Theorem allows us to deduce that the number of distinct right cosets of  $H$  in  $G$  is the same as the number of distinct left cosets of  $H$  in  $G$ .

When  $H \leq G$  sometimes the set of left cosets is different from the set of right cosets. For example, the left cosets of  $\langle(12)\rangle$  in  $S_3$  are not the same as the right cosets. Sometimes the set of left cosets is the same as the set of right cosets, i.e.  $gH = Hg$  for all  $g \in G$ . A subgroup  $N$  for which this is true is called a normal subgroup and we write  $N \trianglelefteq G$ .

The condition that  $gN = Ng$  means that for every  $n \in N, gn \in Ng$ . Therefore, there exists an element  $n' \in N$  with  $gn = n'g$ . So  $gN = Ng$  if and only if for all  $n \in N, gn g^{-1} = n' \in N$  if and only if  $gN g^{-1} = N$  for all  $g \in G$ .

If  $N \trianglelefteq G$  and  $n \in N$ , then  $C_n = \{hnh^{-1} | h \in G\}$ , the conjugacy class of  $n$  must be a subset of  $N$ .

Therefore  $N \triangleleft G$  implies that  $N$  is a union of conjugacy classes. So, computing the conjugacy classes of  $G$  can facilitate finding normal subgroups of  $G$ .

Example: We have  $\langle(123)\rangle \triangleleft S_3$ . Indeed  $C_e = \{e\}$  and  $C_{(123)} = \{(123), (132)\}$ . Thus  

$$\langle(123)\rangle = C_e \cup C_{(123)}.$$

We could also argue that there are only two cosets of  $\langle(123)\rangle$  in  $S_3$  one of which is  $\langle(123)\rangle$ . So the other coset (left or right doesn't matter) must be  $S_3 - \langle(123)\rangle$ .

We conclude that if  $[G:H] = 2$ , then  $H \triangleleft G$ .

When a group  $G$  acts on a set  $A$ , an element  $a \in A$  is invariant under  $\pi \in G$  if  $\pi * a = a$ .

Example: When  $\langle(1234)\rangle$  acts on the closed 4-bead necklaces whose vertices are labelled 1,2,3,4 in order, the necklace with all beads one color is invariant under  $(1234)$ .

When a permutation group  $G$  acts on a set  $A$  and  $\pi \in G$  we define

$$Inv(\pi) = |\{a \in A | \pi * a = a\}|.$$

So  $Inv(\pi)$  is the number of elements in  $A$  which  $\pi$  leaves invariant. We call the underlying set  $\{a \in A | \pi * a = a\} = Fix(\pi)$ . So  $Inv(\pi)$  is the size of  $Fix(\pi)$ . We also say that  $\pi \in G$  stabilizes  $a$ , when  $\pi * a = a$ .

**The Fundamental Lemma 4.10:** *Let  $S$  be the equivalence relation on  $A$  induced by the action of a group  $G$ . Then the number of distinct equivalence classes is*

$$\frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{\pi \in G} Inv(\pi).$$

Proof: Let  $F = \{(\pi, x) \in G \times A | \pi * x = x\}$ . Define the function

$$\mathbb{1}(g, x) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } (g, x) \in F \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

Also let  $S = \{G * x_1, G * x_2, \dots, G * x_r\}$  be the distinct orbits of  $A$  under the action of  $G$  and let  $t_i = |G * x_i|, i = 1, 2, \dots, r$ . Then

$$|F| = \sum_{x \in A} \sum_{\pi \in G} \mathbb{1}(\pi, x) = \sum_{x \in A} |G_x|.$$

But also,

$$|F| = \sum_{\pi \in G} \sum_{x \in A} \mathbb{1}(\pi, x) = \sum_{\pi \in G} |Fix(\pi)| = \sum_{\pi \in G} Inv(\pi).$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{\pi \in G} Inv(\pi) &= \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{x \in A} |G_x| = \sum_{x \in A} \frac{|G_x|}{|G|} \\ &= \sum_{x \in A} \frac{|G_x|}{|G * x| |G_x|} = \sum_{x \in A} \frac{1}{|G * x|} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^r \sum_{x \in G * x_i} \frac{1}{|G * x_i|} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sum_{i=1}^r \left[ \frac{1}{t_i} + \frac{1}{t_i} + \cdots + \frac{1}{t_i} \right], \text{ with } t_i \text{ terms in the brackets} \\
 &= \sum_{i=1}^r 1 = r = |S|. \blacksquare
 \end{aligned}$$

So, the number of distinct orbits is the average of the sizes of the fix sets.

Example: There are six equivalence classes when  $\langle (1234) \rangle$  acts on the 2-colored closed necklaces with 4 beads.

## Section 4: Colorings

Let  $D$  be a set. A coloring of  $D$  is an assignment of a color to each element of  $D$ . That is a coloring corresponds to a function  $f: D \rightarrow R$ , where  $R$  is a set of colors. When  $|D| = k$ , and  $|R| = m$ , there are  $m^k$  colorings of  $D$  using the colors from  $R$ .

Let  $C(D, R)$  denote the set of all colorings of  $D$  using the colors from  $R$ .

If  $G$  is a permutation group acting on  $D$  and  $\pi \in G$ , then there is a corresponding permutation  $\pi^*$  of  $C(D, R)$ . If  $f$  is a coloring, then  $\pi^*(f)$  is another coloring where  $\pi^*f(d) = f(\pi(d))$ , for all  $d \in D$ .

As will be seen in our examples, we might also define this more naturally as  $\pi^*f(d) = f(\pi^{-1}(d))$ , for all  $d \in D$ . This point is immaterial since in the fundamental lemma, we are summing over all group elements - which is equivalent to summing over all of the inverses of group elements.

Example: Label the vertices of a 4-cycle clockwise 1, 2, 3, and 4. Color these Red ( $R$ ), Blue ( $B$ ), Yellow ( $Y$ ) and Green ( $G$ ), in order. We can think of  $f$  as the output string  $RBYG$ . Let  $\pi = (1234)$ . Then  $\pi^*f$  has output string  $BYGR$ .

As an obvious fact we have

**Lemma 4.11:** *The set of induced permutations  $G^* = \{\pi^* | \pi \in G\}$  is a group under composition of functions, and  $|G^*| = |G|$ .*

More importantly.

**Lemma 4.12:** *If  $G$  induces an equivalence relation  $S$  on  $D$ , then  $G^*$  induces an equivalence relation  $S^*$  on  $C(D, R)$  by  $fS^*g$  if and only if there exists  $\pi \in G$  with  $g = \pi^*f$ .*

The proof is left to the reader. Notice here that  $g = \pi^*f$  if and only if  $f = (\pi^{-1})^*g$ . So, our previous remark is well-founded.

The point is that we may concentrate on  $D$  and groups acting on  $D$ , since really all that is important about  $R$  is its cardinality.

## Section 5: The Cycle Index and the Pattern Inventory

When  $\pi \in S_n$  is written as a product of disjoint cycles, the result is called its cycle decomposition. We will write  $cd(\pi)$  for the cycle decomposition of  $\pi$ . Given  $\pi$  we can order the terms of  $cd(\pi)$  with all the 1 –cycles first, followed by any 2 –cycles, etc. So

$$\pi = \prod_{i=1}^L \left[ \prod_{j=1}^{e_i} \gamma_{i,j} \right],$$

where  $L$  is the length of the longest cycle in  $cd(\pi)$  and  $\gamma_{i,j}$  is one of the  $e_i$  cycles of length  $i$  appearing in  $cd(\pi)$ .

We can sharpen our notation for the type of a permutation

$$type(\pi) = \prod_{i=1}^L i^{e_i}.$$

Notice that  $1 \cdot e_1 + 2 \cdot e_2 + \cdots + Le_l = n$ . Also, we define  $cyc(\pi) = e_1 + e_2 + \cdots + e_n$ , which is the number of cycles in  $cd(\pi)$ .

Example:  $\pi = (1234)(56)(78) \in S_8$  has type  $2^2 4^1$  and  $cyc(\pi) = 2 + 1 = 3$ .

Example:  $\pi = (1234)(56)(78) \in S_{11}$  has type  $1^3 2^2 4^1$  and  $cyc(\pi) = 3 + 2 + 1 = 6$ .

**Theorem 4.13:** (Pólya Version 1) *Suppose that  $G$  is a group acting on  $D$ . Let  $R$  be an  $m$  –set of colors. Then the number of distinct (inequivalent) colorings in  $C(D, R)$  which is the number of distinct equivalence classes for  $S^*$  induced by  $G$  on  $C(D, R)$  equals*

$$\frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{\pi \in G} m^{cyc(\pi)}.$$

Proof: By the fundamental lemma it suffices to show that  $m^{cyc(\pi)} = Inv(\pi^*)$  for all  $\pi \in G$ . But any element of  $C(D, R)$  is left invariant under  $\pi^*$  if and only if all elements of  $D$  in a cycle of  $\pi$  are colored the same color. So, for each cycle in  $cd(\pi)$  we have  $m$  choices for color. The multiplication principle now gives the result. ■

So as promised the induced group  $G^*$ , and anything about the set of colors  $R$ , except its size, are immaterial.

If  $G$  is a permutation group and  $k$  is the length of the longest cycle occurring in the cycle decomposition of any element of  $G$ , the cycle index of  $G$  is defined as

$$P_G[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k] = \sum_{\pi \in G} \left( \prod_{a \geq 1} x_a^{e_a} \right).$$

The subscripts  $a$  and exponents  $e_a$  in the products come from the cycle decompositions of the corresponding permutations. It is customary to omit those terms where  $e_a = 0$ . We group like terms in the summation.

Example:  $G = \langle (1234) \rangle \leq S_4$  consists of  $\{(1)(2)(3)(4), (1234), (13)(24), (1432)\}$ . So,

$$P_G[x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4] = P_G[x_1, x_2, x_4] = \frac{1}{4}[x_1^4 + x_2^2 + 2x_4^1].$$

Notice that

$$P_G[m, m, m] = \frac{1}{4}[m^4 + m^2 + 2m] = \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{\pi \in G} m^{\text{cyc}(\pi)}.$$

Example:  $G = \langle (1234) \rangle \leq S_5$  consists of the permutations  $\{(1)(2)(3)(4)(5), (1234)(5), (13)(24)(5), (1432)(5)\}$ . So,

$$P_G[x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4] = P_G[x_1, x_2, x_4] = \frac{1}{4}[x_1^5 + x_1^1 x_2^2 + 2x_1^1 x_4^1].$$

The point being that the ambient supergroup plays a role.

A weight function  $w: R \rightarrow S$ , is any function from a set  $R$  of colors into the set  $S$ .

**Theorem 4.14:** (Pólya Version 2) *If a group  $G$  acts on a set  $D$  whose elements are colored by elements of  $R$ , which are weighted by  $w$ , then the expression*

$$P_G \left[ \sum_{r \in R} w(r), \sum_{r \in R} w(r)^2, \dots, \sum_{r \in R} w(r)^k \right]$$

*generates the pattern inventory of distinct colorings by weight, where  $P_G[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k]$  is the cycle index of  $G$  as it acts on  $D$ .*

Proof: We will proceed by lemmata supposing throughout that  $R = \{1, 2, \dots, m\}$ .

**Lemma 4.15:** *Suppose that the sets  $D_1, D_2, \dots, D_p$  partition  $D$  and let  $C$  be the subset of  $C(D, R)$  which consists of all colorings  $f$  which are constant on the parts. That is, if  $a, b \in D_i$ , for some  $i$ , then  $f(a) = f(b)$ . Then the pattern inventory of the set  $C$  is*

$$\prod_{i=1}^m [w(1)^{|D_{i1}|} + w(2)^{|D_{i2}|} + \dots + w(m)^{|D_{im}|}]$$

Proof: The terms in the expansion of the product are of the form

$$w(i_1)^{|D_{1i_1}|} w(i_2)^{|D_{2i_2}|} \cdot \dots \cdot w(i_m)^{|D_{mi_m}|}.$$

This is exactly the weight given to the coloring which assigns the color  $i_1$  to every element of  $D_1$ , assigns the color  $i_2$  to every element of  $D_2$  etc. Thus, the expression in the theorem statement gives the sums of the weights of colorings which are constant on each part  $D_i$ . ■

**Lemma 4.16:** *Suppose that  $G^* = \{\pi_1^*, \pi_2^*, \dots\}$  is a group of permutations of  $C(D, R)$ . For each  $\pi^* \in G^*$ , let  $\text{sumwt}(\pi^*)$  be the sum of the weights of all colorings  $f$  which are invariant under  $\pi^*$ . Suppose that  $C_1, C_2, \dots$  are the equivalence classes of colorings and denote by  $\text{wt}(C_i)$ , the common weight of all  $f$  in  $C_i$ . Then*

$$wt(C_1) + wt(C_2) + \cdots = \frac{1}{|G^*|} \sum_{\pi_i^* \in G^*} sumwt(\pi_i^*).$$

Proof: For a particular coloring  $f$ ,  $w(f)$  is added in the sum part of the right-hand side exactly as many times as a group element leaves  $f$  invariant. Thus  $w(f)$  is accounted for  $|St(f)|$  times in the summation part of the right-hand side.

But  $|St(f)| = |G^*|/|C(f)|$  by Theorem 4.8, where  $C(f)$  is the equivalence class of  $f$  under  $G^*$  and  $St(f)$  is the stabilizer of  $f$  under the action of  $G^*$ . So, by substitution and simplification the right-hand side of the equation of the lemma is the same as

$$\frac{1}{|G^*|} \sum_{f_i \in C(D,R)} w(f_i) |St(f_i)| = \frac{1}{|G^*|} \sum_{f_i \in C(D,R)} w(f_i) \frac{|G^*|}{|C(f_i)|} = \sum_{f_i \in C(D,R)} \frac{w(f_i)}{|C(f_i)|}$$

Similar, to the proof of the Fundamental Lemma, we now add up the terms  $w(f_i)/|C(f_i)|$  for all  $f_j$  in an equivalence class  $C_j$ . The result is  $wt(C_j)$  for each class  $C_j$ , since all colorings in the class have a common weight, and the number of terms is exactly  $|C_j| = |C(f_i)|$ . So, the total is the left-hand side of the expression in the lemma too. ■

Notice that  $wt(C_1) + wt(C_2) + \cdots$  is the pattern inventory. Let  $\pi$  be a permutation whose cycle decomposition is  $\gamma_1 \gamma_2 \gamma_3 \cdots \gamma_p$ , where  $\gamma_i$  is a cyclic permutation of  $D_i$ , for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, p$ . A coloring  $f$  is invariant under  $\pi^*$  if and only if  $f(a) = f(b)$  whenever  $a$  and  $b$  are in the same part  $D_i$ . By Lemma 4.15

$$\prod_{i=1}^m [w(1)^{|D_i|} + w(2)^{|D_i|} + \cdots + w(m)^{|D_i|}]$$

gives the inventory of the set of colorings left invariant by  $\pi^*$ . Each term in the expansion is of the form

$$\sum_{r \in R} [w(r)^j], \text{ where } j = |D_i|.$$

So, a term like such as this sum occurs in the expansion as many times as  $|D_i| = j$ . That is, as many times as  $\pi$  has a cycle of length  $j$  in its cycle decomposition. This, by definition, is the integer  $e_j$ . So,  $sumwt(\pi^*)$  can be rewritten

$$sumwt(\pi^*) = \left[ \sum_{r \in R} w(r)^j \right]^{e_j}$$

Thus,

$$\frac{1}{|G^*|} \sum_{\pi_i^* \in G^*} sumwt(\pi_i^*) = P_G \left[ \sum_{r \in R} w(r), \sum_{r \in R} w(r)^2, \dots, \sum_{r \in R} w(r)^k \right]. \blacksquare$$

Most especially the constant function  $w(r) = 1$  for all  $r \in R$  gives the number of distinct colorings (orbits of  $C(D, R)$  under the action of  $G$ ). By singling out a particular color, say  $w(r) = 1$  for  $r \neq b$ , and  $w(b) = b \neq 1$ . we can generate the distinct colorings enumerated by how many times the color  $b$  is used.

## Chapter 4 Exercises

- In each case determine whether  $S$  is an equivalence relation on  $A$ . If it is not, determine which properties of an equivalence relation fail to hold.
  - $A$  is the power set of  $\{1,2,3, \dots, n\}$ ,  $aSb$  if and only if  $a$  and  $b$  have the same number of elements.
  - $A$  is the power set of  $\{1,2,3, \dots, n\}$ ,  $aSb$  if and only if  $a$  and  $b$  are disjoint.
  - $A$  is all people in Grand Forks,  $aSb$  if and only if  $a$  and  $b$  have the same blood type.
  - $A$  is all people in North Dakota,  $aSb$  if and only if  $a$  and  $b$  live within 10 miles of each other.
  - $A$  is bit strings of length 23,  $aSb$  if and only if  $a$  and  $b$  have the same number of ones.
- For each equivalence relation from exercise 1, identify all equivalence classes.
- In each case find  $\pi_1 \circ \pi_2$ :
  - $\pi_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \pi_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 3 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ .
  - $\pi_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix}, \pi_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 5 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$ .
  - $\pi_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 6 & 1 & 5 & 2 & 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \pi_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ .
- In each case determine if  $\circ$  is a binary operation on  $X$ . If it is, determine which of the three group axioms hold for  $X, \circ$ .
  - $X = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$ , where  $\circ$  is composition of functions.
  - $X = \mathbb{N}, \circ$  is addition.
  - $X = \mathbb{Q}, \circ$  is addition.
  - $X = \mathbb{Q}, \circ$  is multiplication.
  - $X = \mathbb{R}^* = \mathbb{R} - \{0\}, \circ$  is addition.
  - $X$  is all  $2 \times 2$  matrices with real entries,  $\circ$  is matrix multiplication.
- In each case the group  $G$  induces an equivalence relation on the set  $A$ , find all of the distinct equivalence classes. In each case, the group operation is composition of functions.
  - $A = \{1,2,3,4,5\}, G = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 5 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$
  - $A = \{1,2,3,4,5,6\},$ 

$$G = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 4 & 3 & 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix}, \right.$$

$$\left. \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 6 & 5 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 & 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 6 & 5 \end{pmatrix}, \right.$$

$$\left. \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 4 & 3 & 6 & 5 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 & 6 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$
  - $A = \{1,2,3,4,5\}, G = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \right.$



$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 4 & 5 & 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 5 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \}.$$

6. Check your answers to exercise 5 by using Lemma 4.10 to compute the number of distinct equivalence classes.

7. Check your answers to exercise 6 by computing

$$\sum_{a \in A} \frac{1}{|G * a|}.$$

8. How many allowable colorings (not necessarily distinct) are there for the vertices of a cube if the allowable set of colors is  $\{\text{red}, \text{green}, \text{blue}\}$ ?
9. How many allowable colorings (not necessarily distinct) are there for the vertices of a regular tetrahedron if the allowable set of colors is  $\{\text{red}, \text{green}, \text{blue}, \text{yellow}\}$ ?
10. We make open necklaces using two colors of beads (red and blue), and consider two the same if they are identical, or if one is the reversal of the other. If a necklace consists of 3 beads
- Find  $G^*$ .
  - Find the number of distinct necklaces using Lemma 4.10.
  - Check your answer by enumerating the distinct necklaces.
11. Repeat exercise 10, if we use 4 beads instead of 3.
12. Repeat exercise 10, if we use 5 beads per necklace.
13. Repeat exercise 10, if we use three colors of beads (red, white, and blue).
14. Suppose that we make closed necklaces using two colors of beads, (red and blue), and consider two the same if they are identical, or one can be formed from the other by rotation. If a necklace consists of 3 beads, use Lemma 4.10 to compute the number of distinct necklaces.
15. Repeat exercise 14 where necklaces have 4 beads each.
16. Repeat exercise 15 where we have three colors of beads.
17. Compute  $\text{cyc}(\pi)$  for every permutation from exercise 5.
18. Encode every permutation from exercise 17 as  $x_1^{b_1} x_2^{b_2} \dots x_k^{b_k}$ .
19. Use the first Version of Pólya's Theorem to compute the number of non-isomorphic graphs on 3 vertices.

20. Repeat exercise 19 for graphs on 4 vertices.
21. For the real glutton, repeat exercise 19 for graphs on 5 vertices.
22. Consider a cube in 3-space. There are eight vertices. The following symmetries correspond to permutations of these vertices.
- the identity symmetry
  - rotations by  $\pi$  radians around lines connecting the centers of opposite faces.
  - rotations by  $\pi/2$  or  $3\pi/2$  radians around the lines connecting the centers of opposite faces.
  - rotations by  $\pi$  radians around lines connecting the midpoints of opposite edges.
  - rotations by  $2\pi/3$  radians around lines connecting opposite vertices.
- Encode each of these types of symmetries in the form  $x_1^{b_1} x_2^{b_2} \dots x_8^{b_8}$ . Determine the number of each type of symmetry, and write down the cycle index of this group of symmetries.

23. The number of permutations of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  with code  $x_1^{b_1} x_2^{b_2} \dots x_n^{b_n}$  is given by

$$\frac{n!}{b_1! b_2! \cdot \dots \cdot b_n! 1^{b_1} 2^{b_2} 3^{b_3} \cdot \dots \cdot n^{b_n}}.$$

Verify this formula for  $n = 5, b_1 = 1, b_2 = 2, b_3 = b_4 = b_5 = 0$  by enumerating all permutations of the proper type.

24. How many open four bead necklaces are there in which each bead is one of the colors  $b, r$ , or  $p$ , there is at least one  $p$ , and two necklaces are considered the same if they are identical or if one is the reversal of the other.
25. Repeat exercise 24 if the necklaces are closed and two are considered the same if one is a rotation of the other.
26. Repeat exercise 24 if the necklaces are closed and two are considered the same if one is a rotation, or a reflection of the other.

## Chapter Summary/Key Takeaways

Pólya counting allows us to compute the number of equivalence classes on a set when the equivalence relation is induced by a group. By using weight functions, we can also compute various pattern inventories.

## Part III: Designs and Codes

### Chapter Five: Combinatorial Designs

This chapter begins our foray into the realm of the existence question. Given certain conditions, can we find a configuration of finite sets which meet the conditions? If we cannot, we wish to prove so. If we can, we'd like to be able to demonstrate that the configuration satisfies the conditions. If possible, we might even want to classify all possible configurations which meet the requirements.

For non-existence proofs, we will not necessarily need the power of abstract algebra. For constructions, and to aid in discussing classification we will. So, in this chapter we start with two sections dedicated to finite fields.

This is followed by a section on Latin squares – the most basic configurations we will consider. The initial motivation for considering these configurations was to remove possible ambiguities which might negatively affect the collection of data from agricultural experiments.

The third section is devoted to the basics of balanced incomplete block designs, which were also used in the design of experiments. In the last two sections we give some basic construction techniques for balanced incomplete block designs.

#### Section 1: Finite Prime Fields

Recall that  $\mathbb{Z}$  denotes the integers. With respect to the operations of addition and multiplication the integers satisfy the following eight algebraic axioms:

1. Addition is associative,  $(a + b) + c = a + b + c = a + (b + c)$  always.
2. Addition is commutative,  $a + b = b + a$  always.
3. There is an additive identity 0 so that  $a + 0 = a = 0 + a$  always.
4. Every element  $a$  has an additive inverse,  $-a$ , with  $a + (-a) = 0 = (-a) + a$ .
5. Multiplication is associative,  $(ab)c = abc = a(bc)$  always.
6. Multiplication is commutative,  $ab = ba$  always.
7. There is a multiplicative identity 1 so that  $a \cdot 1 = a = 1 \cdot a$  always.
8. Multiplication distributes over addition,  $a(b + c) = ab + ac$  always.

The function  $\text{mod } n: \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \{0, 1, 2, \dots, n - 1\} = \mathbb{Z}_n$  takes as input any whole number  $a$  and outputs  $r$ , where  $a = qn + r$ , and  $0 \leq r < n$ . We can use this to define addition and a multiplication on  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  where  $a +_n b = (a + b) \text{mod } n$ , and  $a \times_n b = (a \times b) \text{mod } n$ .

Technically we're operating on the equivalence classes modulo  $n$ . So  $[a] +_n [b] = [a + b]$ , and  $[a] \times_n [b] = [ab]$ , where the convention is that we always use the standard system of distinct representatives for equivalence classes  $\{[0], [1], [2], \dots, [n - 1]\}$ . However, the equivalence class notation is a little cumbersome, so we'll dispense with the technicalities to save ourselves a little grief. Also, when the context is clear we'll drop the subscripts on the operations.

With these definitions  $\mathbb{Z}_n = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, n-1\}$ ,  $+_n, \times_n$  satisfies the eight algebraic axioms above by inheritance and the fact that  $\text{mod } n$  is a function.

**Definition:** A commutative ring is a set  $R$  with operations addition and multiplication which satisfies axioms 1 through 8.

**Definition:** A field is a set  $\mathbb{F}$  with operations addition and multiplication which satisfy axioms 1 through 8 above, has  $1 \neq 0$  and which satisfies the further axiom

9. Every nonzero element  $a$  has a multiplicative inverse  $a^{-1}$  with  $aa^{-1} = 1 = a^{-1}a$ .

Equivalently a field is a set with two operations so that  $\mathbb{F}, +$  is a group,  $\mathbb{F}^* := \mathbb{F} - \{0\}$  is a group under multiplication and multiplication distributes over addition left and right

Note that the integers do not form a field since, for example,  $2^{-1} = 1/2 \notin \mathbb{Z}$ .

**Lemma 5.1:** If  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field and  $a \neq 0$ , then  $ab = ac$  implies  $b = c$ .

Proof: Since  $a \neq 0$ , there is  $a^{-1} \in \mathbb{F}$ . Thus  $ab = ac$  means  $a^{-1}ab = a^{-1}ac$ . Whence  $b = c$ . ■

**Lemma 5.2:** If  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field and  $ab = 0$ , then  $a = 0$ , or  $b = 0$ .

Proof: If  $a \neq 0$  and  $ab = 0$ , then  $b = a^{-1}ab = a^{-1} \cdot 0 = 0$ . ■

**Corollary 5.3:** If  $R$  is a set with addition and multiplication satisfying axioms 1 through 5, 7 and 8 and there are nonzero elements  $a, b \in R$  with  $ab = 0$ , then  $R$  is not a field.

**Theorem 5.4:** Let  $n > 1$  be an integer.  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  is a field if and only if  $n$  is prime.

Proof: For the reverse implication it suffices to show that every nonzero element has a multiplicative inverse. So let  $a \in \mathbb{Z}_n - \{0\}$ , where  $n$  is prime. Since  $n$  is prime  $\gcd(a, n) = 1$ . There are therefore integers  $s$  and  $t$  so that  $as + tn = 1$ . Therefore  $a \times_n s = 1$ .

Conversely, since  $n > 1$ , if  $n$  is not prime, then it is composite. Therefore, there exist integers  $a, b$  with  $1 < a, b < n$  and  $n = ab$ . Therefore  $a \times_n b = 0$ . Therefore  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  is not a field by Corollary 5.3. ■

**Lemma 5.5:** If  $a, b \in \mathbb{F}$  a field and  $a \neq 0$ , then there is a unique solution in  $\mathbb{F}$  to  $ax = b$ , namely  $x = a^{-1}b$ .

**Corollary 5.6:** If  $a \in \mathbb{F}^*$ , where  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field, then  $a^{-1}$  is unique.

**Lemma 5.7:** If  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field then  $x^2 - 1 = 0$  has at most two solutions in  $\mathbb{F}$ .

Proof: In any field  $x^2 - 1 = (x - 1)(x + 1)$ . So, if  $x^2 - 1 = 0$ , either  $x + 1 = 0$  or  $x - 1 = 0$ . Since  $1 = -1$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_2$  these solutions do not need to be distinct. ■

**Corollary 5.8:** For  $p$  an odd prime  $\mathbb{Z}_p - \{-1, 0, 1\}$  is the disjoint union of  $(p-3)/2$  sets of the form  $\{a, a^{-1}\}$ .

Proof: Any  $a \in \mathbb{Z}_p - \{-1, 0, 1\}$  has a unique multiplicative inverse.  $a^{-1}$  satisfies  $(a^{-1})^{-1} = a$ .  $a = a^{-1}$  is equivalent to  $a^2 = 1$ . Which is equivalent to  $a$  being a solution to  $x^2 - 1 = 0$ . ■

Example: Let  $p = 13$ . Then the sets of multiplicative inverses are  $\{1\}, \{-1\}, \{2, 7\}, \{3, 9\}, \{4, 10\}, \{5, 8\}, \{6, 11\}$ .

**Theorem 5.9:** (Wilson's Theorem) If  $p$  is prime, then  $(p-1)! \equiv -1 \pmod{p}$ .

Proof: The theorem is trivial for  $p = 2$  so suppose that  $p$  is an odd prime. Let  $I$  be a subset of  $\mathbb{Z}_p$  so that  $\{1\} \cup \{-1\} \cup_{a \in I} \{a, a^{-1}\}$  is a partition of  $\mathbb{Z}_p^*$ . Then

$$(p-1)! = (p-1)(p-2) \cdots 1 \equiv 1 \cdot (-1) \cdot \prod_{i \in I} (i \cdot i^{-1}) \equiv (-1) \cdot 1^{\frac{p-3}{2}} \equiv -1 \pmod{p}. \blacksquare$$

**Lemma 5.10:** If  $a \in \mathbb{Z}_p^*$ , then for each  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_p^*$  there is a unique  $j \in \mathbb{Z}_p^*$  with  $ak \equiv j \pmod{p}$ .

Proof: If  $ak \equiv al \pmod{p}$ , then multiplying both sides by  $a^{-1}$  gives  $k \equiv l \pmod{p}$ . ■

**Theorem 5.11:** (Fermat's Little Theorem) If  $p$  is prime and  $p$  does not divide  $a$ , then  $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ .

Proof: Again, the case  $p = 2$  is trivial. So, assume  $p > 2$  is an odd prime. By Lemma 5.10, after re-arranging terms

$$a \cdot 2a \cdot 3a \cdots (p-1)a \equiv 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdots (p-1) \pmod{p}.$$

We rewrite this as  $a^{p-1}[(p-1)!] \equiv (p-1)! \pmod{p}$ . We deduce the conclusion by cancelling  $-(p-1)! \pmod{p}$  from both sides. ■

Example: Let  $p = 7$  and  $a = 2$ . On  $\mathbb{Z}_7^*$  the function  $y = f(x) = 2x$  consists of  $\{(1,2), (2,4), (3,6), (4,1), (5,3), (6,5)\}$

The product of second coordinates is the same as the product of first coordinates and is nonzero modulo 7.

Definition: For integers  $n$  and  $a$ , the order of  $a$  modulo  $n$ , denoted  $\text{ord}_n a$  is the least positive integer  $k$  so that  $a^k \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$ . Notice that  $\text{ord}_n a$  exists only when  $\gcd(a, n) = 1$ .

**Theorem 5.12:**  $a^m \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$  if and only if  $k = \text{ord}_n a$  divides  $m$ .

Proof:  $\Rightarrow$ ) If  $a^m \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$  there are unique integers  $q, r$  with  $m = kq + r$  and  $0 \leq r < k$ .  
 $1 \equiv a^m \equiv a^{kq+r} \equiv a^{kq} a^r \equiv (a^k)^q a^r \equiv 1^q a^r \equiv a^r \pmod{n}$ .

By the minimality of  $k$  we must have  $r = 0$ .

$\Leftarrow$ ) If  $k = \text{ord}_n a$  divides  $m$ , then  $m = kq$  for some  $q \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Thus  
 $a^m = a^{kq} \equiv (a^k)^q \equiv 1^q \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$ . ■

**Corollary 5.13:** *If  $p$  is prime  $k = \text{ord}_p a$  divides  $p - 1$  for all  $a \in \mathbb{Z}_p^*$ .*

Definition: An integer  $a$  is a primitive root modulo a prime  $p$  if  $\text{ord}_p a = p - 1$ .

**Theorem 5.14:** (Lagrange) *If  $p$  is a prime integer and  $f$  is a polynomial with integral coefficients of degree  $n$  and  $p$  does not divide  $f$ 's lead coefficient, then  $f(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  has at most  $n$  incongruent solutions mod  $p$ .*

Proof: We use induction on  $n$ . If  $f(x) = a_1x + a_0$  where  $p \nmid a_1$  then  $f(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  is equivalent to  $a_1x \equiv -a_0 \pmod{p}$ . We write  $1 = s \cdot a_1 + t \cdot p$  and let  $x \equiv -sa_0 \pmod{p}$ .

Now suppose that the theorem is true for all polynomials with integral coefficients of degree less than or equal to  $n - 1$  for which  $p$  does not divide the lead coefficient. Let

$$f(x) = a_nx^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1x + a_0, \text{ where } p \nmid a_n.$$

If  $f(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  has no solutions, then we're done.

Else if  $a$  is a solution write  $f(x) = (x - a)q(x) + r(x)$ , where  $r(x) = 0$ , or the degree of  $r(x)$  is less than the degree of  $x - a$  (which is one). Thus,  $r$  is a constant polynomial. Notice that the degree of  $q(x)$  is  $n - 1$ .

Now  $f(a) = (a - a)q(a) + r = r \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ . So  $f(x) \equiv (x - a)q(x) \pmod{p}$ .

If  $b$  is another solution to  $f(x) \equiv (x - a)q(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ , then either  $(b - a) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  or  $q(b) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ . Thus any solution  $b \not\equiv a \pmod{p}$  is a solution to  $q(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ . We are now done by inductive hypothesis. ■

**Theorem 5.15:** *Let  $p$  be prime and  $d$  a positive divisor of  $p - 1$ .  $x^d - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  has exactly  $d$  incongruent solutions modulo  $p$ .*

Proof: Since  $d \mid (p - 1)$ , there is an integer  $e$  with  $p - 1 = de$ . Thus

$$x^{p-1} - 1 = (x^d - 1)(x^{d(e-1)} + x^{d(e-2)} + \dots + x^d + 1) := (x^d - 1)q(x).$$

By Fermat's Little Theorem  $x^{p-1} - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  has exactly  $p - 1$  incongruent solutions modulo  $p$ . Each of these is either a solution of  $x^d - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ , or  $q(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ .

By Theorem 5.14 the number of incongruent solutions to  $x^d - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  is less than or equal to  $d$ . Also, the number of incongruent solutions to  $q(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  is less than or equal to  $(p - 1) - d = d(e - 1) = \deg q(x)$ .

Therefore, the number of incongruent solutions to  $x^d - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  is at least  $(p - 1) - [(p - 1) - d] = d$ .

Thus, the number of incongruent solutions to  $x^d - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  is exactly  $d$ . ■

Euler's  $\varphi$  –function counts the number of positive integers not greater than a given one which are also relatively prime to it.

**Theorem 5.16:** *Let  $p$  be prime and  $d$  be a positive divisor of  $p - 1$ , there are exactly  $\varphi(d)$  incongruent integers with order  $d$  modulo  $p$ .*

Proof: First, we need a lemma due to K.F. Gauss.

**Lemma 5.17:** *For a positive integer  $n$ ,*

$$\sum_{d|n, d>0} \varphi(d) = n.$$

Proof of lemma: Let  $d|n, d > 0$  and  $S_d = \{m \in \mathbb{Z} | 1 \leq m \leq n \text{ and } \gcd(m, n) = d\}$ . Recall that  $\gcd(m, n) = d$  if and only if  $\gcd(m/d, n/d) = 1$ . Thus  $|S_d| = \varphi(n/d)$ .

Every integer  $m$  with  $1 \leq m \leq n$  is in exactly one set  $S_d$  where  $d$  is a positive divisor of  $n$ , so

$$\sum_{d|n, d>0} \varphi\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) = n.$$

But since  $d|n$  and  $d > 0, n = dk$ , for some positive integer  $k$  which is also a divisor of  $n$ . So,

$$\sum_{d|n, d>0} \varphi\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) = \sum_{k|n, d>0} \varphi(k) = n. \blacksquare$$

Now, to prove the theorem, we let  $f(d)$  denote the number of integers between 1 and  $p - 1$  inclusive which have order  $d$  modulo  $p$ . We have

$$p - 1 = \sum_{d|p-1, d>0} f(d) = \sum_{d|p-1, d>0} \varphi(d).$$

To show  $f(d) = \varphi(d)$  for all positive divisors  $d$  of  $p - 1$  it suffices to show  $f(d) \leq \varphi(d)$  for all positive divisors  $d$  of  $p - 1$ , since by the preceding equation we could not have strict inequality anywhere.

So, if  $f(d) = 0$  for some positive divisor  $d$  of  $p - 1$ , we are done since  $\varphi(d) > 0$  for  $d > 0$ .

Thus, for every divisor  $d$  of  $p - 1$ ,  $f(d) > 0$ . Which means that there is  $a \in \mathbb{Z}_p^*$  with

$$\text{ord}_p a = d.$$

The definition of order implies that  $a, a^2, \dots, a^d$  are all incongruent (else  $\text{ord}_p a < d$ ). Finally, for  $1 \leq j \leq d$

$$(a^j)^d \equiv a^{jd} \equiv a^{dj} \equiv (a^d)^j \equiv 1^j \equiv 1 \pmod{p}.$$

So, the  $d$  powers of  $a$  above are all  $d$  incongruent solutions to  $x^d - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ .

The proof of the theorem is completed by the following lemma and corollary.

**Lemma 5.18:** Let  $a$  and  $n$  be positive integers with  $\gcd(a, n) = 1$ . For  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$

$$\text{ord}_n a^i = \frac{\text{ord}_n a}{\gcd(\text{ord}_n a, i)}.$$

Proof: Let  $d = \gcd(\text{ord}_n a, i)$  and  $k = \text{ord}_n a$ . Write  $k = db$  and  $i = dc$  where  $b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Notice that  $\gcd(b, c) = 1$  and

$$b = \frac{k}{d} = \frac{\text{ord}_n a}{\gcd(\text{ord}_n a, i)}.$$

Since  $(a^i)^b \equiv (a^{dc})^b \equiv a^{bcd} \equiv (a^{bd})^c \equiv (a^k)^c \equiv 1^c \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$ ,  $\text{ord}_n a^i | b$ .

Also  $a^{i \cdot \text{ord}_n a^i} \equiv (a^i)^{\text{ord}_n a^i} \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$ , so  $k | i \cdot \text{ord}_n a^i$ . Which is to say that  $db | dc \cdot \text{ord}_n a^i$ . Therefore  $b | c \cdot \text{ord}_n a^i$ . Since  $\gcd(b, c) = 1$  we have  $b | \text{ord}_n a^i$ .

Since  $b | \text{ord}_n a^i$  and vice versa, and they are both positive integers, they are equal. ■

**Corollary 5.19:** Let  $a$  and  $n$  be positive integers with  $\gcd(a, n) = 1$ .  $\text{ord}_n a^i = \text{ord}_n a$  if and only if  $\gcd(\text{ord}_n a, i) = 1$ .

The theorem has now been proved. ■

**Corollary 5.20:** (Primitive Root Theorem for finite prime fields) *There are exactly  $\varphi(p - 1)$  incongruent primitive roots modulo a prime  $p$ .*

We have now proven a sufficient number of theorems for finite prime fields – fields whose number of elements is a prime integer. In the next section we will generalize these theorems for a larger class of objects.

## Section 2: General Finite Fields

The characteristic of a ring (or field) is zero if  $m \cdot 1 = 0$  implies  $m = 0$ . Otherwise the characteristic is the least positive integer  $m$  so that  $m \cdot 1 = 1 + 1 + \dots + 1 = 0$  in the ring.

**Theorem 5.21:** If  $\mathbb{F}$  is a finite field then its characteristic is prime, and  $\mathbb{F}$  contains a subfield isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}_p$ .

Proof: Let  $1 \in \mathbb{F}$ , and  $n = |\mathbb{F}|$ . Then  $1, 2 \cdot 1, 3 \cdot 1, \dots, (n + 1) \cdot 1$  are not all distinct. Thus, there are positive integers  $i$  and  $j$  with  $i < j$  and  $i \cdot 1 = j \cdot 1$ . Thus  $(j - i) \cdot 1 = 0$  with  $j - i > 0$ . Therefore, a finite field does not have characteristic zero.

Let  $m$  be the characteristic of  $\mathbb{F}$ . Then the elements in  $\mathbb{F}_0 = \{1, 2 \cdot 1, \dots, m \cdot 1 = 0\}$  are all distinct in  $\mathbb{F}$  (if not,  $m$  is not the least positive integer with  $m \cdot 1 = 0$ ). Notice that  $\mathbb{F}_0$  is closed under addition and multiplication. Also  $\mathbb{F}_0$  satisfies the field axioms by inheritance from  $\mathbb{F}$ . Therefore  $\mathbb{F}_0$  is a subfield of  $\mathbb{F}$ .



Define a ring homomorphism (preserves  $+$  and  $\cdot$ ) from  $\mathbb{F}_0$  to  $\mathbb{Z}_m$  by  $f(k \cdot 1) = k$ . Since  $f$  is clearly bijective and preserves operations,  $\mathbb{Z}_m$  must be a field. Thus  $m$  is prime. ■

**Corollary 5.22:** *If  $\mathbb{F}$  is a finite field with characteristic  $p$ , then  $p \cdot x = 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{F}$ .*

Proof:  $p \cdot x = x + x + \cdots + x = x(1 + 1 + \cdots + 1) = x \cdot p \cdot 1 = x \cdot 0 = 0$ . ■

**Corollary 5.23:** *If  $\mathbb{F}$  is a finite field with  $q$  elements and characteristic  $p$ , then  $q = p^n$  for some positive integer  $n$ .*

Proof: Since  $\mathbb{F}$  is finite we can form a set  $S = \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  with a minimal number of elements so that every element  $x \in \mathbb{F}$  is a linear combination  $a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \cdots + a_nx_n$ , where the coefficients  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in \mathbb{Z}_p$  by Corollary 5.21. No element of  $S$  can be written as a linear combination of the others, or else  $S$  does not have a minimal number of elements.

Indeed, suppose that for some  $x \in \mathbb{F}$  we have  $x = a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \cdots + a_nx_n$  and also  $x = b_1x_1 + b_2x_2 + \cdots + b_nx_n$ , where  $a_i, b_i \in \mathbb{Z}_p$ . Suppose that there exists  $i$  so that  $a_j = b_j$  for all  $j > i$ , but  $a_i \neq b_i$ . Then

$$0 = (a_1 - b_1)x_1 + (a_2 - b_2)x_2 + \cdots + (a_i - b_i)x_i, \text{ with } c = a_i - b_i \neq 0 \in \mathbb{Z}_p.$$

Let  $d = c^{-1} \in \mathbb{Z}_p$ . Then,

$$x_i = -d[(a_1 - b_1)x_1 + (a_2 - b_2)x_2 + \cdots + (a_{i-1} - b_{i-1})x_{i-1}] \rightarrow \leftarrow$$

Thus, every  $x \in \mathbb{F}$  is writable in exactly one way as a  $\mathbb{Z}_p$  –linear combination of the elements of  $S$ . Every  $\mathbb{Z}_p$  –linear combination of elements of  $S$  is in  $\mathbb{F}$  because  $\mathbb{F}$  is closed under addition.

Therefore  $|\mathbb{F}| = p^n$ . ■

To construct finite fields of order  $p^n$  where  $p$  is prime and  $n > 1$  we must consider polynomials.

A natural power function is of the form  $x^m$  where  $m \in \mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ . For a ring,  $R$ , a polynomial over  $R$  is an  $R$  –linear combination of a finite number of natural power functions. For a nonzero polynomial the largest natural number  $n$  for which the coefficient of  $x^n$  is nonzero is the degree of the polynomial. When a polynomial of degree  $n$  has 1 as the coefficient on  $x^n$  it is called a monic polynomial. The degree of the zero polynomial is not really defined, but can be taken to be  $-1$  or even  $-\infty$ .

The set of all polynomials over a ring  $R$  is denoted  $R[x]$ . We may add two polynomials by adding the respective coefficients and multiply polynomials by convoluting the coefficients.

**Lemma 5.24:** *If  $R$  is a ring, then  $R[x]$  is a ring with respect to the addition and multiplication described above. Moreover,  $R[x]$  is commutative if  $R$  is.*

Proof: Omitted for esthetic reasons. ■

When the ring of coefficients,  $R$ , is a field special things happen. For example,

**Theorem 5.25:** (The Division Algorithm for Polynomials) *If  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field,  $f, g \in \mathbb{F}[x]$  and  $g \neq 0$  then there are unique polynomials  $q$  and  $r$  so that  $f = qg + r$  and either  $r = 0$  or the degree of  $r$  is strictly less than the degree of  $g$ .*

Proof: Use induction on the degree of  $f$ . ■

We have already made use of Theorem 5.25. We are stating it here to better make clear an analogy between the integers and any ring of polynomials with coefficients from a field  $\mathbb{F}$ .

For  $f, g \in \mathbb{F}[x]$ , we write  $g|f$  and say  $g$  divides  $f$  exactly when  $r = 0$  when Theorem 5.25 is applied to  $f$  and  $g$ .

If  $c \in \mathbb{F}$  and  $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \cdots + a_nx^n$ , then  $f(c) = a_0 + a_1c + a_2c^2 + \cdots + a_nc^n$  is the value of  $f$  at  $c$ . We say that  $c$  is a root of  $f$  when  $f(c) = 0$ .

**Theorem 5.26:** (Factor Theorem) *If  $f \in \mathbb{F}[x] - \{0\}$ , where  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field, then  $f(c) = 0$  if and only if  $(x - c)|f(x)$ .*

Proof: By the division algorithm  $f(x) = q(x)(x - c) + r(x)$  where  $r(x)$  is zero or has degree less than 1. In any case  $r(x)$  is a constant  $k \in \mathbb{F}$ . When we evaluate at  $c$  we find  $f(c) = k$ . Thus  $f(c) = 0$  if and only if  $r = 0$ . ■

As a corollary, provable by induction, we have

**Theorem 5.27:** (Lagrange again) *If  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field and  $f(x) \in \mathbb{F}[x]$  has degree  $n$ , then  $f$  has at most  $n$  roots in  $\mathbb{F}$ .*

We are mostly interested in the extreme behavior with respect to the previous theorem. For example, one can show that  $x^2 + x + 1$  has no roots in  $\mathbb{Z}_2[x]$ . On the other hand, when  $p$  is prime  $x^p - x$  has  $p$  distinct roots in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$  by Fermat's Little Theorem. When a polynomial  $f$  of degree  $n$  has exactly  $n$  distinct roots in  $\mathbb{F}$  we say that  $\mathbb{F}$  splits  $f$ , or that  $f$  splits in  $\mathbb{F}$ .

A nonzero polynomial  $f \in \mathbb{F}[x]$  is irreducible over  $\mathbb{F}$  if  $f = gh$  implies either  $g \in \mathbb{F}$  or  $h \in \mathbb{F}$ . Notice that an irreducible polynomial has no roots in  $\mathbb{F}$ . The converse is false as is demonstrated by  $x^4 + x^3 + x + 2 = (x^2 + x + 2)(x^2 + 1)$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_3[x]$ . However, the following lemma is true.

**Lemma 5.28:** *If  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field,  $f$  is an irreducible monic polynomial in  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ ,  $g$  is monic and  $g|f$ , then  $g = 1$  or  $g = f$ .*

Thus, irreducible monic polynomials in  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ , where  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field, are analogous to primes in  $\mathbb{Z}$ .

We are now ready to generalize modular arithmetic. In  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ , where  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field, we write that  $g \equiv h \pmod{f}$  in case  $f|(g - h)$ . This relation is called congruence modulo  $f$ .

**Lemma 5.29:** *Let  $\mathbb{F}$  be a field. If  $f(x) \in \mathbb{F}[x] - \{0\}$ , then congruence modulo  $f$  is an equivalence relation on  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ .*

Proof: Left to the reader. ■

We can therefore mimic the definition of  $+_m$  and  $\times_m$  for  $\mathbb{Z}_m$  to define binary operations on the set of equivalence classes modulo  $f$  in  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ , where  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field. If  $f$  has degree  $n$  then by the Division Algorithm

$$\mathbb{K} = \{c_0 + c_1x + c_2x^2 + \cdots + c_{n-1}x^{n-1} | c_i \in \mathbb{F}\}$$

is a system of distinct representatives for the equivalence classes modulo  $f$ . We define the binary operations  $+_f$  and  $\times_f$  on  $\mathbb{K}$  by  $g \times_f h = r$  when  $gh = fq + r$  and  $r = 0$  or  $\deg r < \deg f = n$  and  $g +_f h = r$  when  $(g + h) = fq + r$  and  $r = 0$  or  $\deg r < n$ .

When  $\mathbb{F}$  is a field,  $\mathbb{K}$  inherits much of the structure of  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ , and is always a commutative ring. The following theorem is the natural generalization of Theorem 5.4 with a similar proof.

**Theorem 5.30:** *Let  $\mathbb{F}$  be a field and  $f$  a polynomial of degree  $n$  in  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ . The set*

$$\mathbb{K} = \{c_0 + c_1x + c_2x^2 + \cdots + c_{n-1}x^{n-1} | c_i \in \mathbb{F}\}$$

*is a field with respect to the operations  $+_f$  and  $\times_f$  if and only if  $f$  is irreducible in  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ .*

Notice that when  $\mathbb{F} = \mathbb{Z}_p$ , where  $p$  is prime and  $f$  is an irreducible polynomial of degree  $n$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$ ,  $\mathbb{K}$  is a finite field of order  $q = p^n$ . We usually denote  $\mathbb{K}$  by  $GF(p^n)$ ,  $GF(q)$  or  $\mathbb{F}_q$ .

We will often use the notation  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{Z}_p[x]/\langle f \rangle$ . It is customary to replace  $x$  with  $\alpha$  for the elements of  $\mathbb{K}$  to make clear the distinction between elements of  $\mathbb{K}$  and elements of  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ .

Another natural generalization is the following:

**Theorem 5.31:** (Fermat's Larger Theorem) *If  $a \in \mathbb{F}_q^*$  where  $q = p^n$ , then  $a^{p^n-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{f}$ .*

This can be restated as: If  $a \in \mathbb{F}_q$ , then  $a^{p^n} \equiv a \pmod{f}$ .

Another restatement is: If  $a \in \mathbb{F}_q$ , then  $a$  is a root of  $x^{p^n} - x$  in  $\mathbb{F}_q[x]$ .

Yet another restatement is:  $x^{p^n} - x = x^q - x$  splits in  $\mathbb{F}_q[x]$ .

We may also generalize the primitive root theorem to

**Theorem 5.32:** (Primitive Root Theorem) *If  $\mathbb{F}$  is a finite field of order  $q = p^n$  where  $p$  is prime, then there exactly  $\phi(q - 1)$  elements  $\alpha$  in  $\mathbb{F}$  with  $\text{ord}_f \alpha = q - 1$ .*

These elements whose order is as large as possible are called primitive roots. When  $n = 1$  these are primitive roots as defined in section 5.1. If  $h(x) \in \mathbb{Z}_p[x]$  is monic and irreducible of degree  $n$  and  $\alpha$  is a root of  $h$ , then we will call  $h$  a primitive polynomial, if  $\alpha$  is a primitive root. Otherwise,  $h$  is not primitive.

Example: When  $p = 3$  and  $n = 2$ ,  $h(x) = x^2 + x + 2$  is primitive. Indeed,  $h$  is irreducible in  $\mathbb{Z}_3[x]$  since it has no roots, and therefore no linear factors. Moreover, if  $h(\alpha) = 0$ , then  $\alpha^2 + \alpha + 2 = 0$ , or equivalently  $\alpha^2 = 2\alpha + 1$ . This dependence relation allows all powers of  $\alpha$  to be replaced with their polynomial form in  $\mathbb{K} = \{a_0 + a_1\alpha | a_0, a_1 \in \mathbb{Z}_3\}$ .

Power of $\alpha$	Polynomial form
$\alpha^0$	1
$\alpha^1$	$\alpha$
$\alpha^2$	$2\alpha + 1$
$\alpha^3$	$\alpha \cdot \alpha^2 = \alpha \cdot (2\alpha + 1) = 2\alpha^2 + \alpha = 2(2\alpha + 1) + \alpha = 2\alpha + 2$
$\alpha^4$	$\alpha \cdot \alpha^3 = \alpha \cdot (2\alpha + 2) = 2\alpha^2 + 2\alpha = 2(2\alpha + 1) + 2\alpha = 2$
$\alpha^5$	$\alpha \cdot \alpha^4 = 2\alpha$
$\alpha^6$	$\alpha(2\alpha) = 2\alpha^2 = 2(2\alpha + 1) = \alpha + 2$
$\alpha^7$	$\alpha^2 + 2\alpha = 4\alpha + 1 = \alpha + 1$
$\alpha^8$	$\alpha^2 + \alpha = 2\alpha + 1 + \alpha = 1$

Table 5.1: Demonstration of the powers of a primitive root

On the other hand, when  $p = 3$  and  $n = 2$ ,  $g(x) = x^2 + 1$  is not primitive. Here  $g$  is irreducible in  $\mathbb{Z}_3[x]$  since it has no roots, and therefore no linear factors. However, if  $g(\beta) = 0$ , we get the condition  $\beta^2 = -1 = 2$ . Whence  $\beta^4 = (-1)^2 = 1$ . So  $\beta$  does not have order 8.

This does not mean that we cannot use  $g$  to build a field of order 9, it just means that no root of  $g$  will generate the multiplicative group of the field. However, one can show that  $\beta + 1$  will have order 8 and therefore be a primitive root for the field.

In general, to build  $\mathbb{F}_q$ , where  $q = p^n$  we factor  $x^q - x$  over  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$ . Every irreducible monic polynomial of degree  $n$  over  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$  will appear in the factorization of  $x^q - x$  since it splits completely in  $\mathbb{F}_q$  by Fermat's Larger Theorem.

It can be shown that every monic irreducible degree  $n$  polynomial in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$  has  $n$  distinct roots, all of which have the same order in  $\mathbb{F}_q^*$ . Therefore, there will be in general  $\varphi(q - 1)/n$  monic irreducible primitive polynomials of degree  $n$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$ . Any resulting monic irreducible degree  $n$  polynomial can be used to build  $\mathbb{F}_q$ .

Example: When  $p = 2$ ,  $n = 3$  and  $q = 2^3 = 8$ , we have  $q - 1 = 7$  and  $\varphi(q - 1) = 6$ . So, there are  $6/3 = 2$  monic irreducible cubic polynomials in  $\mathbb{Z}_2[x]$ , both of which are primitive. In  $\mathbb{Z}_2[x]$ ,  $x^8 - x = x(x - 1)(x^3 + x + 1)(x^3 + x^2 + 1)$ .

Example: When  $p = 3$ ,  $n = 2$  and  $q = 9$ ,  $\varphi(q - 1) = 4$  and there are  $4/2 = 2$  monic irreducible primitive quadratic polynomials in  $\mathbb{Z}_3[x]$ . Over  $\mathbb{Z}_3$

$$x^9 - x = x(x - 1)(x + 1)(x^2 + 1)(x^2 + x + 2)(x^2 + 2x + 2).$$

The following helpful facts can be used to minimize the amount of work that it takes to factor  $x^q - x$  into irreducible polynomials in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$  if one is working by hand.

**Lemma 5.33:** *If  $f$  is an irreducible factor of  $x^{p^n} - x$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$ , then  $\deg f$  divides  $n$ . Especially  $\deg f \leq n$ .*

Proof: Let  $q = p^n$  and  $\mathbb{F} = GF(q)$ . Suppose that  $\deg f = m$ . Then

$$\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{Z}_p[x]/\langle f \rangle$$

is a finite subfield of  $\mathbb{F}$ . If  $\beta$  is a primitive root for  $\mathbb{K}$ , then it has order  $p^m - 1$  in  $\mathbb{K}$ . Thus the order of  $\beta$  is also  $p^m - 1$  in  $\mathbb{F}$ . By Corollary 4.9  $p^m - 1$  divides  $p^n - 1$ . By the next lemma we deduce that  $m|n$ . ■

**Lemma 5.34:** *If  $a, m$  and  $n$  are positive integers with  $a > 1$ , then  $(a^m - 1)|(a^n - 1)$  if and only if  $m|n$ .*

Proof: First  $m \leq n$  is necessary. Next, write  $n = mq + r$ , where  $0 \leq r < m$  and  $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

Then

$$a^n - 1 = (a^m - 1)[a^{(q-1)m+r} + a^{(q-2)m+r} + \dots + a^{m+r} + a^r] + a^r - 1$$

where  $0 \leq a^r - 1 < a^m - 1$ . So,  $(a^m - 1)|(a^n - 1)$  if and only if  $a^r - 1 = 0$  if and only if  $r = 0$  if and only if  $m|n$ . ■

So, when  $m|n$  every irreducible monic polynomial of degree  $m$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$  will be an irreducible factor of  $x^{p^n} - x$  in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$ .

Example: Over  $\mathbb{Z}_3$  the polynomial  $x^{27} - x$  will have 3 monic irreducible linear factors:  $x, x - 1$ , and  $x - 2 = x + 1$ . Every other irreducible monic factor must be a cubic polynomial. There are therefore 8 monic irreducible cubic polynomials in  $\mathbb{Z}_3[x]$ . Only  $\phi(26)/3 = 4$  of which are primitive.

Finally, if  $\alpha$  is a root of the monic polynomial  $f(x) = x^m + a_{m-1}x^{m-1} + \dots + a_1x + a_0$ , where  $a_0 \neq 0$ , then  $\alpha^{-1}$  is a root of  $1 + a_{m-1}x + \dots + a_{m-i}x^i + \dots + a_0x^m$ . Equivalently  $\alpha^{-1}$  is a root of  $x^m + \frac{a_1}{a_0}x^{m-1} + \dots + \frac{a_{m-i}}{a_0}x^i + \dots + \frac{1}{a_0} = g(x)$ . We call  $g(x)$  the reciprocal polynomial of  $f(x)$ . A polynomial can be self-reciprocal, i.e. equal to its own reciprocal. Since the multiplicative group of a finite field is cyclic, and the order of any element in a cyclic group is the same as its inverse's order we have that if  $f$  is a monic irreducible factor of  $x^q - x$ , then so is its reciprocal polynomial  $g$ .

### Section 3: Latin Squares

Suppose we want to conduct an experiment to determine which of 5 varieties of seed gives the best yield. As a first pass we might test each variety in each of 5 different soil types. By collecting the seeds in blocks this only requires 5 separate tests, although 25 data sets must be maintained. For a larger number of seeds and/or a larger number of soil types, this could get expensive. Also, this plan doesn't take other possible factors into account. Still, it gives the idea of a so-called factorial design - just try every single possibility.

As a second pass we might want to test our 5 varieties not only in 5 soil types, but also using 5 different brands of pesticide. To ensure no variety of seed receives preferential treatment - that they should all be treated the same, we should test each variety with each possible ordered pair (soil type, pesticide brand). Similarly, every pesticide brand should be involved in a test with each ordered pair (seed variety, soil type). It turns out that in this case what we need to organize our experiment is a Latin square.

A Latin square of order  $n$  is an  $n \times n$  array with entries from a set of size  $n$ , so that every entry appears exactly once in each row and exactly once in each column.

If we label our pesticide brands  $A, B, C, D$  and  $E$ , label 5 columns with our seed varieties, and label 5 rows with the soil types, we might wind up with

	Seed type 1	Seed type 2	Seed type 3	Seed type 4	Seed type 5
Soil type 1	$A$	$B$	$C$	$D$	$E$
Soil type 2	$B$	$C$	$D$	$E$	$A$
Soil type 3	$C$	$D$	$E$	$A$	$B$
Soil type 4	$D$	$E$	$A$	$B$	$C$
Soil type 5	$E$	$A$	$B$	$C$	$D$

Figure 5.2 A Latin Square of order 5

So now with our 5 experiments we can take more effects into account.

Suppose, though, that we also want to take into account the brand of herbicide used. Say we have five herbicide brands. Then we can build another Latin Square of order 5 with columns labelled by seed varieties, and rows labelled by soil types, where the entries are the herbicide brands. But is it possible to preserve fairness? That is can we arrange it so that this table in concert with the previous table has the property that in our tests we can give every ordered pair of herbicide and pesticide a fair shake. The answer is yes, by using a pair of orthogonal Latin squares.

Two Latin squares of order  $n$  are (pairwise) orthogonal if every possible ordered pair of entries occurs exactly once when the squares are juxtaposed. A set of Latin squares  $A^{(1)}, A^{(2)}, \dots, A^{(r)}$  of order  $n$  is mutually orthogonal if  $A^{(i)}$  is pairwise orthogonal to  $A^{(j)}$  for all  $i \neq j$ . We say we have a set of MOLS.

Back to our example with 5 soil types, 5 seed types, 5 brands of pesticide and 5 brands of herbicide. To save ourselves some trouble we will also use  $A, B, C, D$  and  $E$  to label our pesticide brands. The Latin square of order 5 in Figure 5.3 is orthogonal to Latin square in Figure 5.2.

	Seed type 1	Seed type 2	Seed type 3	Seed type 4	Seed type 5
Soil type 1	$A$	$B$	$C$	$D$	$E$
Soil type 2	$C$	$D$	$E$	$A$	$B$
Soil type 3	$E$	$A$	$B$	$C$	$D$
Soil type 4	$B$	$C$	$D$	$E$	$A$
Soil type 5	$D$	$E$	$A$	$B$	$C$

Figure 5.3: Another Latin square of order 5

In general, we will want to know the answers to the following questions.

1. Given positive integers  $v$  and  $r$ , can we construct a set of  $r$  MOLS of order  $v$ ?
2. Given a positive integer  $v$ , what is the maximal number of MOLS in a set?
3. How can we verify that two Latin squares of order  $v$  are orthogonal?
4. What if the number of varieties of seed is not equal to the number of soil types?

To answer the first two questions, we begin by adopting the convention that all of our squares of order  $n$  will have entries from just one  $n$  –set. We will also eschew row and column labels. By convention rows and columns will be implicitly labelled, in order,  $1, 2, 3, \dots, n$ .

**Theorem 5.35:** *If there are  $r$  mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $n$ , then  $r \leq n - 1$ .*

Proof: Suppose that  $A^{(1)}, A^{(2)}, \dots, A^{(r)}$  are  $r$  MOLS of order  $n$ . For the purpose of proving the theorem let's suppose the entries are from  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . Denote by  $a_{i,j}^{(p)}$  the  $i, j$ th entry of  $A^{(p)}$  for  $p = 1, 2, \dots, r$ .

In  $A^{(1)}$  permute  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  using the transposition  $(1k)$  if necessary, so that  $a_{1,1}^{(1)} = 1$ . Interchanging 1 and  $k$  throughout keeps  $A^{(1)}$  a Latin square on  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  and it is still orthogonal with the remaining squares in the set: If before  $(a_{i,j}^{(1)}, a_{i,j}^{(p)})$  was  $(k, l)$ , it's now  $(1, l)$ , and if it was  $(1, l)$ , it's now  $(k, l)$ . This process is called normalization.

Continuing, we can normalize so that  $a_{1,k}^{(j)} = k$ , for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , and  $j = 1, 2, \dots, r$ . At which point we say that the set is in standard form.

Now since every square has a 1 in the 1,1 position,  $a_{2,1}^{(p)} \neq 1$ , for  $p = 1, 2, \dots, r$ . Also because  $(i, i) = (a_{1,i}^{(p)}, a_{1,i}^{(q)})$  we must have that  $a_{2,1}^{(p)} \neq a_{2,1}^{(q)}$  for  $p \neq q$ . So  $\{a_{2,1}^{(1)}, a_{2,1}^{(2)}, \dots, a_{2,1}^{(r)}\}$  is an  $r$  –subset of  $\{2, 3, 4, \dots, n\}$ . Therefore,  $r \leq n - 1$ . ■

A set of  $n - 1$  MOLS of order  $n$  is called a complete set.

**Theorem 5.36:** *There is a complete set of mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $p^k$  when  $p$  is prime and  $k$  is a positive integer.*

Proof: Let  $q = p^d$ , where  $p$  is prime and  $d$  is a positive integer. Let  $\mathbb{F}_q$  denote the field of order  $q$ . Write the elements of  $\mathbb{F}_q$  in the order  $b_0 = 0, b_1 = 1, \dots, b_{p^d-1}$ . For  $\gamma \in \mathbb{F}_q^*$  build the square  $A^{(\gamma)}$  by setting  $a_{i,j}^{(\gamma)} = \gamma \cdot b_i + b_j$ .

**Lemma 5.37:**  *$A^{(\gamma)}$  so constructed is a Latin square of order  $q$ , for all  $\gamma \in \mathbb{F}_q^*$ .*

Proof of lemma: 1)  $a_{i,j}^{(\gamma)} = a_{i,k}^{(\gamma)}$  if and only if  $\gamma \cdot b_i + b_j = \gamma \cdot b_i + b_k$  if and only if  $b_j = b_k$ , by additive cancellation, if and only if  $j = k$ .

2)  $a_{i,j}^{(\gamma)} = a_{k,j}^{(\gamma)}$  if and only if  $\gamma \cdot b_i + b_j = \gamma \cdot b_k + b_j$  if and only if  $\gamma \cdot b_i = \gamma \cdot b_k$  if and only if  $b_i = b_k$ , by multiplicative cancellation since  $\gamma \neq 0$ , if and only if  $i = k$ .

3) Let  $x \in \mathbb{F}_q$ . a) For  $i$  given,  $x = a_{i,j}^{(\gamma)}$ , where  $b_j = x - \gamma \cdot b_i$ . b) For  $j$  given,  $x = a_{i,j}^{(\gamma)}$ , where  $b_i = \gamma^{-1}(x - b_j)$ . ■

**Lemma 5.38:** *If  $\gamma, \delta \in \mathbb{F}_q^*$ , with  $\gamma \neq \delta$ , then  $A^{(\gamma)}$  and  $A^{(\delta)}$  are orthogonal.*

Proof: Let  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{F}_q \times \mathbb{F}_q$ . Then  $(x, y) = (a_{i,j}^{(\gamma)}, a_{i,j}^{(\delta)})$  if and only if

$$x = \gamma \cdot b_i + b_j \text{ and } y = \delta \cdot b_i + b_j$$

if and only if

$$(x - y) = \gamma \cdot b_i - \delta \cdot b_i = (\gamma - \delta)b_i$$

if and only if  $b_i = (x - y)/(\gamma - \delta)$ . So  $i$  is completely determined given  $x$  and  $y$ , and  $j$  is now determined by Lemma 5.37. Therefore, every ordered pair from  $\mathbb{F}_q \times \mathbb{F}_q$  occurs at least once.

None can occur more than once by tightness. ■

The theorem is proved. ■

So, for prime powers the Latin square problem is nicely closed. For every prime power we have as many Latin squares as we could hope to have, and no more.

For integers which are not prime powers, the story is quite different. We begin with the problem of the 36 officers: We are given 36 officers, six officers from each of six different ranks, and also six officers from each of six different regiments. We are to find a  $6 \times 6$  square formation so that each row and column contains one and only one officer of each rank and one and only one officer from each regiment, and there is only one officer from each regiment of each rank. That is, the ranks give a Latin square, and the regiments, give an orthogonal Latin square.

In 1782, Leonhard Euler conjectured that this could not be done. In fact, he conjectured that there was not a pair of orthogonal Latin squares for any positive whole number which was twice an odd number.

In 1900, a mathematician named John Tarry systematically checked all 9,408 pairs of normalized Latin squares of order 6 and showed that Euler was correct for this case. Normalization was an important part of Tarry's proof, since there are 812,851,200 pairs of Latin squares of order 6.

However, in 1960 a trio of mathematicians proved that Euler was wrong in general.

**Theorem 5.39:** (Bose, Shrikhande, Parker) *If  $n > 6$  is twice an odd number, then there is a pair of orthogonal Latin squares of order  $n$ .*

The proof of this theorem goes beyond the scope of our course, but we can discuss some of the tools that they had at hand, and why this was an important problem.



One of the most important construction techniques is due to MacNeish. In 1922 he used what is commonly called the Kronecker product of matrices to build larger Latin squares from smaller ones. Given two square arrays,  $A$  of side  $m$  and  $B$  of side  $n$ , we can build a square array of side  $mn$  whose entries are ordered pairs  $(a, b)$ . The first coordinate is the same for the  $n \times n$  block which is the intersection of the first  $n$  rows, and the first  $n$  columns. The second coordinates in this block are simply the elements of  $B$ . In general, the first coordinate for the  $n \times n$  block at the intersection of the  $(km + 1)$ th through  $(km + n)$ th columns with the  $(jm + 1)$ th through  $(jm + n)$ th rows is the  $j, k$ th entry of  $A$ , while the second coordinates are the entries of  $B$ . We will label the new square  $A \otimes B$ .

**Lemma 5.40:** *If  $A$  is a Latin square of order  $m$ , and  $B$  is a Latin square of order  $n$ , then  $A \otimes B$  is a Latin square of order  $mn$ .*

Proof: Left as an exercise for the reader. ■

**Theorem 5.41:** (MacNeish) *If there are  $r$  mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $m$  and another  $r$  mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $n$ , then there are  $r$  mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $mn$ .*

Proof: Let  $A^{(1)}, A^{(2)}, \dots, A^{(r)}$  be  $r$  mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $m$ , and let  $B^{(1)}, B^{(2)}, \dots, B^{(r)}$  be  $r$  mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $n$ . Let  $C^{(i)} = A^{(i)} \otimes B^{(i)}$ , for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, r$ . Then  $C^{(1)}, C^{(2)}, \dots, C^{(r)}$  are  $r$  mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $mn$ . The remainder of the proof is left as an exercise. ■

**Corollary 5.42:** *Suppose that  $n > 1$  has prime factorization  $p_1^{e_1} p_2^{e_2} \cdot \dots \cdot p_s^{e_s}$  where all exponents are positive whole numbers. Let  $r$  be the smallest of quantities  $p_i^{e_i} - 1, i = 1, 2, \dots, s$ . Then there are at least  $r$  mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $n$ .*

**Corollary 5.43:** *If  $n > 1$  has prime factorization  $n = 2^e p_1^{e_1} p_2^{e_2} \cdot \dots \cdot p_s^{e_s}$ , where  $e \neq 1$  and the  $p_i$ 's are odd primes whose exponents are positive integers, then there is a pair of mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $n$ .*

So, Bose, Shrikhande and Parker really had only to show existence of a pair of mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $2p$  for all odd primes  $p > 3$ . This noteworthy accomplishment touched off a flurry of research in this area which lasted a good twenty years.

There are, however, many unanswered questions here. For example, for  $n = 10$  are there three mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order 10? What is the largest value of  $r$  so that there is a set of  $r$  mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order 22? Finally, we include the following conjecture.

**Conjecture 5.44:** (Prime power conjecture) *If there is a complete set of mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $n$ , then  $n$  is a prime power.*

The next section deals with our fourth question: What if the number of varieties is not equal to the number of soil types?

## Section 4: Introduction to Balanced Incomplete Block Designs

In the preceding section we considered running experiments where we were given a certain number of varieties on which we wanted to experiment. Almost naively we had the number of varieties equal to the number of conditions, for each type of condition considered. If we consider the possibility of wanting to generate statistics for tread wear for automotive tires (vehicles with four wheels only) then we might have 8 different brands of tires and 10 different automobiles. Most importantly on any given car we could run experiments using at most four brands of tires. That is, when we separate our varieties into blocks, we can no longer have all varieties in a block. So, we need to generalize the idea of orthogonal Latin squares. The result of this abstraction will be objects called Balanced Incomplete Block Designs, or BIBDs for short.

A block design on a finite set  $V$  with  $|V| \geq 2$  consists of a finite collection  $\mathfrak{B}$  of non-empty subsets of  $V$  called blocks. The elements of  $V$  are called varieties, or vertices, or points. A block design is balanced if all blocks have the same size  $k$ , every variety appears in exactly  $r$  blocks and any two varieties are simultaneously in exactly  $\lambda$  blocks. A block design is incomplete in case  $k < v$ .

Remark: Our definition is for so-called 2 –designs, since every pair of points is in the same number of blocks together. In general, a  $t$  –design is balanced for every  $t$  –subset of the vertex set. We will investigate only 2 –designs since any  $t$  –design is an  $s$  –design for  $2 \leq s \leq t$ .

If  $V$  is a  $v$  –set of varieties and  $\mathfrak{B}$  a  $b$  –set of  $k$  –subsets of  $V$ , which are the blocks of a BIBD where every point is in  $r$  blocks, and every pair of points is in  $\lambda$  blocks we say that  $V$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  form a BIBD with parameters  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$ . Equivalently a  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$  –BIBD means a BIBD with parameters  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$ .

Example: Let  $V = \{0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10\}$  and set  $\mathfrak{B} = \{\{1,3,4,5,9\}, \{2,4,5,6,10\}, \{0,3,5,6,7\}, \{1,4,6,7,8\}, \{2,5,7,8,9\}, \{3,6,8,9,10\}, \{0,4,7,9,10\}, \{0,1,5,8,10\}, \{0,1,2,6,9\}, \{1,2,3,7,10\}, \{0,2,3,4,8\}\}$ . Then  $V$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  form an  $(11,11,5,5,2)$  –BIBD.

This example helps raise a number of pertinent questions.

1. How do we know that this example really works, i.e. how can we verify that all pertinent conditions are satisfied?
2. Are there necessary conditions which must be satisfied for a BIBD to exist?
3. What are sufficient conditions?
4. When a BIBD exists, is it essentially unique?, If so, why?, If not unique, how many different configurations are there?

The remainder of this section will provide some answers to the second of these questions.

**Lemma 5.45:** *In a BIBD with parameters  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$  we have  $bk = vr$ .*

Proof: Count occurrences of varieties in blocks two ways. On the one hand there are  $b$  blocks each consisting of  $k$  varieties. On the other hand, there are  $v$  varieties each occurring in exactly  $r$  blocks. ■

**Lemma 5.46:** *In a BIBD with parameters  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$  we have  $\lambda(v - 1) = r(k - 1)$ .*

Proof: For a particular variety count pairs of varieties it occurs in blocks with two ways. On the one hand, there are  $v - 1$  other varieties that it must appear with in exactly  $\lambda$  blocks each. On the other hand this variety appears in exactly  $r$  blocks and in each block there are  $k - 1$  other varieties. ■

Example: The parameters  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda) = (12, 9, 4, 3, 2)$  satisfies Lemma 5.45 since  $12 \cdot 3 = 9 \cdot 4$ . But the set fails to satisfy Lemma 5.46, since  $2 \cdot 8 \neq 4 \cdot 2$ . Therefore, there can be no BIBD with parameters  $(12, 9, 4, 3, 2)$ .

Example: The parameter set  $(43, 43, 7, 7, 1)$  satisfies both lemmata. However, as we'll see, there is also no  $(43, 43, 7, 7, 1)$  –design. So, we stress that the conditions from the lemmata are necessary, but not sufficient.

It is useful when investigating BIBDs to represent them via incidence matrices similar to what we did for graphs. An incidence matrix for a  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$  –BIBD is a  $v \times b$   $\{0, 1\}$  –matrix whose rows are labelled by the varieties, columns by blocks, and where the  $i, j$  entry is 1 in case the  $i$ th variety is in the  $j$ th block, and 0 otherwise.

Example: An incidence matrix for our example of an  $(11, 11, 5, 5, 2)$  –BIBD where the rows are labelled in order 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 and the blocks are in reverse order given except for the first one.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We henceforth assume that the reader is familiar with the basics of matrix multiplication and determinants. We will review some of these topics lightly.

An incidence matrix  $A$  for a BIBD with parameters  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$  must have all column sums equal to  $k$ . So, for all  $1 \leq j \leq b$ ,  $a_{1,j} + a_{2,j} + a_{3,j} + \cdots + a_{v,j} = k$ . All row sums equal to  $r$ , that is, for all  $1 \leq i \leq v$ ,  $a_{i,1} + a_{i,2} + a_{i,3} + \cdots + a_{i,b} = r$ . Lastly for  $i \neq j$ , the dot product of the  $i$ th row with the  $j$ th row counts the number of columns in which both rows have a 1, which must equal  $\lambda$ . We denote the identity matrix of side  $n$  by  $I_n$  and the all 1's matrix of side  $m$  by  $J_m$  we have

**Lemma 5.47:** *An incidence matrix  $A$  for a  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$  –BIBD must satisfy the matrix equation  $AA^T = (r - \lambda)I_v + \lambda J_v$ .*

Proof: The  $i, j$  entry of  $AA^T$  is the dot product of the  $i$ th row of  $A$  with the  $j$ th column of  $A^T$ . Which is the dot product of the  $i$ th row of  $A$  and the  $j$ th row of  $A$ . This value is  $\lambda$  when  $i \neq j$  and  $r$  when  $i = j$ . ■

**Theorem 5.48:** *If  $A$  is an incidence matrix for a BIBD with parameters  $b, v, r, k, \lambda$ , then  $\det(AA^T) = [r + (v - 1)\lambda](r - \lambda)^{v-1}$ .*

Proof:

$$\det(AA^T) = \det \begin{bmatrix} r & \lambda & \lambda & \cdots & \lambda \\ \lambda & r & \lambda & \cdots & \lambda \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \lambda & \cdots & \lambda & r & \lambda \\ \lambda & \cdots & \lambda & \lambda & r \end{bmatrix}.$$

Adding the last  $v - 1$  rows to the first row does not change the value of the determinant so

$$\det(AA^T) = \det \begin{bmatrix} r + \lambda(v - 1) & r + \lambda(v - 1) & r + \lambda(v - 1) & \cdots & r + \lambda(v - 1) \\ \lambda & r & \lambda & \cdots & \lambda \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \lambda & \cdots & \lambda & r & \lambda \\ \lambda & \cdots & \lambda & \lambda & r \end{bmatrix}$$

Next, we factor  $r + \lambda(v - 1)$  out of the first row.

$$\det(AA^T) = (r + \lambda(v - 1)) \det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ \lambda & r & \lambda & \cdots & \lambda \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \lambda & \cdots & \lambda & r & \lambda \\ \lambda & \cdots & \lambda & \lambda & r \end{bmatrix}.$$

Subtract  $\lambda$  times the first row from each of the last  $v - 1$  rows to get

$$\det(AA^T) = (r + \lambda(v - 1)) \det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ 0 & r - \lambda & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & r - \lambda & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & r - \lambda \end{bmatrix}$$

From which the result follows. ■

A first application of Theorem 5.48 uses the fact that for an incomplete design we have  $k < v$ . The constraint  $\lambda(v - 1) = r(k - 1)$  then implies that  $\lambda < r$ . So Theorem 5.48 proves that  $\det(AA^T) > 0$ . Which led R.A. Fisher to the following theorem.

**Theorem 5.49:** (Fisher's Inequality) *For a BIBD with parameters  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda), v \leq b$ . }*

Proof: If  $v > b$  we can pad an incidence matrix  $A$  for the design by adding  $v - b$  columns of zeroes resulting in a matrix  $B$  with  $BB^T = AA^T$ . But since  $B$  has a column of zeroes

$$\det B = \det B^T = 0.$$

So  $0 = \det B \det B^T = \det BB^T > 0$ , a contradiction. ■

When a BIBD with parameters  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$  has  $v = b$ , then the equation  $bk = vr$  implies that  $k = r$  too. We call a BIBD with parameters  $(v, v, k, k, \lambda)$  a  $(v, k, \lambda)$  –symmetric design, or a symmetric design with parameters  $(v, k, \lambda)$ . The integer  $n = k - \lambda$  is called the order of the design. A second application of Theorem 5.48, explicitly for symmetric designs, is due to Schutzenberger.

**Theorem 5.50:** (Schutzenberger) For a symmetric design with parameters  $(v, k, \lambda)$ , if  $v$  is even, then  $n = k - \lambda$  is a square integer.

Proof: Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a  $(v, k, \lambda)$  –symmetric design and  $A$  an incidence matrix for  $D$ . Since  $r = k$  the equation  $\lambda(v - 1) = r(k - 1)$  now reads  $\lambda(v - 1) = k(k - 1)$ . So

$$r + \lambda(v - 1) = k + k(k - 1) = k + k^2 - k = k^2.$$

Thus

$$[\det A]^2 = \det A \det A^T = \det AA^T = [r + \lambda(v - 1)](k - \lambda)^{v-1} = k^2 n^{v-1}.$$

Since the left-hand side is a square, the right-hand side must be too. But the exponent on  $n$  is odd, which means that  $n$  must be a square. ■

Example: Consider a putative symmetric design with parameters  $(22, 7, 2)$ . These parameters satisfy both earlier lemmata. However,  $v = 22$  is even, and  $n = 5$  is not a square. Therefore, no such design can exist.

## Section 5: Sufficient Conditions and Constructions for BIBDs

A design with block size  $k = 3$  is called a triple system. If in addition  $\lambda = 1$ , we have a Steiner triple system, or *STS*. Notice that for an *STS*, given  $v$ , we can find  $r$  via Lemma 5.46. Then we can find  $b$  from Lemma 5.45. So, the parameter set of an *STS* is completely determined as soon as we know  $v$ . We call a Steiner triple system on  $v$  varieties an *STS*( $v$ ).

These objects are misnamed, because ten years before Steiner considered them the Rev. T.P. Kirkman considered them. He proved the existence of several families. Bose started the proof of and Skolem later finished the proof of:

**Theorem 5.51:** *There exists an  $STS(v)$  with*

1.  $v = 6n + 1, b = nv$ , and  $r = 3n$  for all positive integers  $n$ .
2.  $v = 6n + 3, b = (3n + 1)(2n + 1)$ , and  $r = 3n + 1$ , for all nonnegative integers  $n$ .

This theorem is a corollary of the following theorem and known constructions of smaller  $STS$ 's.

**Theorem 5.52:** *If  $\mathcal{D}_1$  is an  $STS(v_1)$  and  $\mathcal{D}_2$  is an  $STS(v_2)$ , then there exists an  $STS(v_1 \cdot v_2)$ .*

Proof: Let the varieties of  $\mathcal{D}_1$  be  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{v_1}$  and the varieties of  $\mathcal{D}_2$  be  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_{v_2}$ . Let  $c_{i,j}$   $1 \leq i \leq v_1, 1 \leq j \leq v_2$  be a set of  $v_1 \cdot v_2$  symbols. Define the blocks of an  $STS(v_1 \cdot v_2)$  by  $\{c_{i,r}, c_{j,s}, c_{k,t}\}$  is a block if and only if one of the following conditions holds:

1.  $r = s = t$  and  $\{a_i, a_j, a_k\}$  is a block of  $\mathcal{D}_1$ .
2.  $i = j = k$  and  $\{b_r, b_s, b_t\}$  is a block of  $\mathcal{D}_2$ .
3.  $\{a_i, a_j, a_k\}$  is a block of  $\mathcal{D}_1$  and  $\{b_r, b_s, b_t\}$  is a block of  $\mathcal{D}_2$ .

Now check that all properties are satisfied. This includes that there are the correct number of blocks and every new point  $c_{i,j}$  is in an appropriate number of blocks. The real work is in showing that the new design is pairwise balanced since this devolves into cases. ■

Example: When  $n = 0$  in part 2 of Theorem 5.51, we get the trivial  $STS(3)$  consisting of one block containing all three vertices. According to Theorem 5.52 it suffices to construct an  $STS$  on  $v = 2n + 1$  vertices to obtain an  $STS(6n + 3)$ . This does require that  $2n + 1$  be of the form  $6m + 1$  or  $6m + 3$ . Which happens when  $n = 3m$  or  $n = 3m + 1$ .

To find  $STS(v)$ 's for small values of  $v$  and other designs there are a number of construction techniques. The first construction requires us to find what is called a difference set. A difference set  $D$  with parameters  $(v, k, \lambda)$ , aka a  $(v, k, \lambda)$  –difference set, is a  $k$  –subset of a group  $G$  of order  $v$ , written multiplicatively, so that every  $g \in G - \{e\}$  is writable as  $d_2^{-1}d_1$  for exactly  $\lambda$  pairs  $d_1, d_2 \in D$ , with  $d_1 \neq d_2$ .

Example: Let  $G$  be the integers modulo 13 written additively.  $D = \{0, 1, 3, 9\}$  is a  $(13, 4, 1)$  –difference set in  $G$  as can be seen in Table 5.1 which gives all of the differences.

row $-_{13}$ column	0	1	3	9
0	0	12	10	4
1	1	0	11	5
3	3	2	0	7
9	9	8	6	0

Table 5.4: The table of differences for a  $(13, 4, 1)$ -difference set

For a difference set  $D$  in a group  $G$  the set  $Dg = \{dg | d \in D\}$  is called a translate of the difference set. From the previous example  $D + 5 = \{0 + 5, 1 + 5, 3 + 5, 9 + 5\} = \{5, 6, 8, 1\}$ .

**Theorem 5.53:** *If  $D$  is a  $(v, k, \lambda)$ -difference set in a multiplicative group  $G$ , then the set of translates  $\{Dg | g \in G\}$  form the blocks of a symmetric  $(v, k, \lambda)$  –design where  $G$  is the set of varieties.*

Proof: First notice that the number of translates is  $v = b$ . Also, each translate has cardinality  $k$  by the group cancellation law. A group element  $g$  is in the translate  $Dg_i$  iff there is  $d_i \in D$  with  $g = d_i g_i$ . There are  $k$  choices for  $d_i$ , there are therefore  $k$  choices for  $g_i = d_i^{-1}g$ . So, we have  $v$  varieties,  $v$  blocks, each block of cardinality  $k$ , and each variety in  $k$  blocks.

It remains to show that any pair of varieties is in exactly  $\lambda$  blocks together. Let  $g_1 \neq g_2$  be two group elements. Put  $x = g_2 g_1^{-1}$ . The element  $x$  appears exactly  $\lambda$  times as  $d_2^{-1} d_1$  for  $d_1, d_2 \in D$  with  $d_1 \neq d_2$ . There are therefore exactly  $\lambda$  solutions in  $d_1$  and  $d_2$  to the equation

$$d_2^{-1} d_1 = g_2 g_1^{-1} = x.$$

That is, exactly  $\lambda$  times we have  $d_1 g_1 = d_2 g_2$  with  $d_1, d_2 \in D$ . Thus  $|Dg_1 \cap Dg_2| = \lambda$ . ■

Example: Starting with the block  $D + 0 = \{0, 1, 3, 9\}$ , we build a  $(13, 4, 1)$  –design with varieties from  $\mathbb{Z}_{13} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12\}$  and remaining blocks  $D + 1 = \{1, 2, 4, 10\}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} D + 2 &= \{2, 3, 5, 11\}, D + 3 = \{3, 4, 6, 12\}, D + 4 = \{0, 4, 5, 7\}, D + 5 = \{1, 5, 6, 8\}, \\ D + 6 &= \{2, 6, 7, 9\}, D + 7 = \{3, 7, 8, 10\}, D + 8 = \{4, 8, 9, 11\}, D + 9 = \{5, 9, 10, 12\}, \\ D + 10 &= \{0, 6, 10, 11\}, D + 11 = \{1, 7, 11, 12\} \text{ and } D + 12 = \{0, 2, 8, 12\}. \end{aligned}$$

For a  $(v, k, \lambda)$  –difference set, the number  $n = k - \lambda$  is called the order. This agrees with our definition of the order of a symmetric design. It is often the case that the difference set is left invariant by a multiplier. In fact, frequently a prime dividing  $n$  will be a multiplier.

Example: From our  $(13, 4, 1)$  –difference set in  $\mathbb{Z}_{13}$  we have  $n = 3$  which is prime. We can decompose  $\mathbb{Z}_{13}$  into orbits under multiplication by 3. For  $g \in \mathbb{Z}_{13}$  its orbit will be

$$[g] = \{3^k g \mid k \in \mathbb{Z}\}.$$

So, we have  $[0] = \{0\}$ ,  $[1] = \{1, 3, 9\}$ ,  $[2] = \{2, 6, 5\}$ ,  $[4] = \{4, 12, 10\}$ ,  $[7] = \{7, 8, 11\}$ . Notice that the difference set is the union of orbits  $[0]$  and  $[1]$ . Therefore 3 is a multiplier for this difference set.

The term difference set comes from the fact that the first examples of this kind of behavior were discovered by Gauss. In his famous book *Disquisitiones Arithmeticae* Gauss essentially proves the following theorem which we present without proof.

**Theorem 5.54:** *Let  $p$  be a prime congruent to 3 modulo 4. The set of quadratic residues modulo  $p$ , which are those numbers  $x \in \mathbb{Z}_p^*$  so that there is a  $y \in \mathbb{Z}_p^*$  with  $x = y^2$ , form a difference set in  $\mathbb{Z}_p$  with parameters  $(p, (p - 1)/2, (p - 3)/4)$ .*

Many results have been proven about difference sets. The method of differences generalizes to what is called the method of mixed differences. This more general method is used to construct designs which are not symmetric designs by starting with a collection of starter blocks. For the method above, we have only one starter block - namely the difference set.

We close this section with a short list of methods which allow us to build new designs from a given design.

1. Replication: By simply repeating every block of a  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$  –design  $m$  times

we construct a  $(bm, v, rm, k, \lambda m)$  –design.

2. Complementation: For a  $(b, v, r, k, \lambda)$  –design on  $V$  with blocks  $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_b\}$  the complementary design has blocks  $\{V - a_1, V - a_2, \dots, V - a_b\}$  and parameters  $(b, v, b - r, v - k, b - 2r + \lambda)$ . So up to complementation we can take  $2k < v$ .
3. Set Difference: Starting with a symmetric  $(v, k, \lambda)$  –design with blocks  $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_v\}$  select some block  $a_i$  to delete and remove all points on that block from the remaining blocks. This gives a  $(v - 1, v - k, k, k - \lambda, \lambda)$  –design on  $V - a_i$  with blocks  $a_j - a_i$ , for  $i \neq j$  and  $1 \leq j \leq v$ .
4. Restriction: Start again with a symmetric  $(v, k, \lambda)$  –design with blocks  $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_v\}$ . Now select a block  $a_i$  and for  $j \neq i$  form new blocks  $b_j = a_j \cap a_i$ . As long as  $\lambda > 1$  this gives a  $(v - 1, k, k - 1, \lambda, \lambda - 1)$  –design.

## Section 6: Finite Plane Geometries

The last major source of designs we wish to discuss are those coming from finite geometries. This is an incredibly rich area for research questions, especially if one does not assume that a finite field is used to coordinatize the space. We will stick to the relatively safe realm where we assume that we have a finite field  $\mathbb{F}_q$  of order  $q = p^n$  for some prime integer  $p$ . We will also deal mainly with low dimensional geometries, namely planes.

Similar to continuous mathematics we can consider  $\mathbb{F}_q^2$  as a Cartesian product coordinatizing a plane. It's just that in this case because  $\mathbb{F}_q$  is finite, there will be only finitely many points in our plane, which we will denote  $EG(2, q)$ .  $EG$  stands for Euclidean Geometry, and 2 corresponds to the dimension.

In fact, by the multiplication principle, we have exactly  $q^2$  points in our plane. Each point can be coordinatized by an ordered pair  $(x, y)$ , where  $x, y \in \mathbb{F}_q$ .

The other natural objects from Euclidean geometry to consider are lines, which over a field satisfy equations of the form  $Ax + By = D$ , where not both  $A$  and  $B$  are zero. If  $B \neq 0$  we can rewrite our line in slope-intercept form  $y = mx + b$  with  $m, b \in \mathbb{F}_q$ , where  $m$  is the slope, and  $b$  is the  $y$  –intercept. If  $B = 0$ , then  $A \neq 0$  and we get the vertical lines that satisfy  $x = c$  for some  $c \in \mathbb{F}_q$ . There are  $q^2$  lines of the first form and there are  $q$  vertical lines.

By the properties of a field each line will contain exactly  $q$  points. Also, every point will be on exactly  $q + 1$  lines -- one for each slope in  $\mathbb{F}_q$ , and one with infinite slope. Finally, any two points determine a unique line. Therefore, the points and lines of  $EG(2, q)$  form a design with parameters  $(q^2 + q, q^2, q + 1, q, 1)$ .

This design is slightly different from previous examples in that it is resolvable. This means that blocks come in parallel classes. The blocks from a parallel class partition the set of vertices.

If we extend every line of slope  $m$  to  $\infty$ , we get the effect of looking down a pair of parallel railroad tracks - which we perceive as intersecting eventually. Let the common point at infinity



which is the intersection of all lines of slope  $m$  be labelled  $(m)$ . Include the point  $(\infty)$  as the point of intersection of all of the vertical lines. Finally connect all of the points at infinity with a line at infinity  $l_\infty$ . The result will be a new structure with  $q + 1$  new points and 1 new line. We call this  $PG(2, q)$ .  $PG$  now stands for projective geometry.

The points and lines of  $PG(2, q)$  form a symmetric  $(q^2 + q + 1, q + 1, 1)$ -design. It can be shown that the existence of such a design is equivalent to a complete set of MOLS of order  $q$ . We will show that the result of performing the set difference construction starting with a projective plane of order  $q$  and using the line at infinity gives an affine plane of order  $q$ . In fact, any line (not just the one at infinity) can be used.

Classically, to construct  $PG(2, q)$  we define its points to be the one-dimensional subspaces of  $\mathbb{F}_q^3$ , and its lines to be the two-dimensional subspaces. A point is on a line, if the corresponding one-dimensional subspace is included in the two-dimensional subspace.

Now any point is completely determined by a direction vector  $v \neq \langle 0, 0, 0 \rangle$ . We assign the components of  $v$  as the homogeneous coordinates of the point, with the convention that two sets of homogeneous coordinates determine the same point if and only if they are in a common ratio. That is  $[a : b : c] = [d : e : f]$  if and only if there is  $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}_q^*$  with  $\langle a, b, c \rangle = \alpha \langle d, e, f \rangle$ . Which means that the vectors are parallel, or, if you prefer, point in the same direction.

Given a point with homogeneous coordinates  $[a : b : c]$  and  $c \neq 0$ , the point has equivalent homogeneous coordinates  $[a/c : b/c : 1] = [x : y : 1]$ . We call such a point a finite point and let it correspond to  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{F}_q^2$ .

If a point has homogeneous coordinates  $[a : b : c]$  and  $a \neq 0$ , then

$$[a : b : 0] = \left[ 1 : \frac{b}{a} : 0 \right] = [1 : m : 0].$$

So, the points at infinity labelling non-infinite slopes of lines are  $(m) = [1 : m : 0]$ .

Finally, if a point has homogeneous coordinates  $[0 : b : 0]$ , then  $b \neq 0$  and

$$[0 : b : 0] = [0 : 1 : 0] = (\infty).$$

We also use homogeneous coordinates for the lines, but represent them as column vectors. Any line is really a plane through  $(0, 0, 0) \in \mathbb{F}_q^3$ , and so is completely determined by its normal vector. The point  $[x : y : z]$  lies on the line  $[A : B : C]^T$  if and only if  $Ax + By + Cz = 0$ .

A line  $[A : B : C]^T$  with  $B \neq 0$  is the same as the line  $[-m : 1 : -b]^T$ , where  $m = -A/B$  and  $b = -C/B$ . A finite point  $[x : y : 1]$  is on the line  $[-m : 1 : -b]^T$  if and only if

$$-mx + y - b = 0, \text{ equivalently } y = mx + b.$$

The only infinite point on the line with coordinates  $[-m : 1 : -b]^T$  is  $(m)$ .

A line with homogeneous coordinates  $[A : 0 : C]$  with  $A \neq 0$  has equivalent homogeneous coordinates  $[1 : 0 : -c]^T$ , where  $-c = C/A$ . A finite point  $[x : y : 1]$  lies on this line if

$$x + 0 \cdot y - c = 0, \text{ equivalently } x = c.$$

The only point at infinity on this line is  $[0:1:0]^T = \infty$ .

Any line with homogeneous coordinates  $[0:0:C]$  must have  $C \neq 0$  and therefore we may take the homogeneous coordinates to be  $[0:0:1]^T$ . This is the line at infinity. Every point at infinity is on this line, but no finite point lies on the line at infinity.

The finite points and finite lines in  $PG(2, q)$  comprise  $EG(2, q)$  as promised.

Finite geometries with higher dimensions can now be built. They are a richer environment since there are more kinds of substructure.

## Chapter 5 Exercises

1. Find the order of 5 modulo 13.
2. Find an integer mod 13 with (multiplicative) order 12.
3. Show that  $g(x) = x^2 + 2x + 2$  is irreducible mod 3. Show that if  $\alpha^2 + 2\alpha + 2 = 0 \pmod{3}$ , then  $\alpha$  has order 8 in  $\mathbb{F}_9$ . Hence  $x^2 + 2x + 2$  is a primitive polynomial modulo 3.
4. Find the multiplicative inverse of 8 in each finite prime field.
  - a) in  $\mathbb{F}_{11}$ .
  - b) in  $\mathbb{F}_{13}$ .
  - c) in  $\mathbb{F}_{17}$ .

5. In  $\mathbb{F}_7$  solve the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned}x + 2y + 3z &= 2 \\2x + 4y + 5z &= 6 \\3x + y + 6z &= 4.\end{aligned}$$

6. Show that 5 is a primitive root modulo 23.
7. Find all monic irreducible quadratic polynomials mod 5.
8. Let  $p = 2$  and  $n = 4$ .
  - a) How many monic irreducible quartic polynomials are there in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$ ?
  - b) How many primitive monic irreducible quartic polynomials are there in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$ ?
  - c) How many self-reciprocal monic irreducible quartic polynomials are there in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$ ?
 Use parts a)-c) to factor  $x^{p^4} - x$  into monic irreducible factors in  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$ .
9. Show that  $q(x) = x^2 + 1$  is reducible mod 5.
10. Repeat exercise 9 changing to mod 7. Is  $q(x)$  primitive mod 7?
11. Show that the probability that a monic irreducible cubic polynomial is primitive in  $\mathbb{Z}_5[x]$  is  $1/2$ .
12. Show that  $x^4 + x + 1$  is primitive in  $\mathbb{Z}_2[x]$ .
13. Find a primitive root modulo 31.
14. Describe how you would construct 10 mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order 275.
15. Construct a complete set of MOLS of order 5.

16. For each value of  $n$  determine how many mutually orthogonal Latin squares can be constructed using MacNeish's Theorem.
  - a)  $n = 12$
  - b)  $n = 13$
  - c)  $n = 21$
  - d)  $n = 25$
  - e)  $n = 35$
  - f)  $n = 36$
  - g)  $n = 39$
  - h)  $n = 75$
  - i)  $n = 140$
  - j)  $n = 185$
  - k)  $n = 369$
  - l)  $n = 539$
17. Repeat exercise 16, with squares of order 7.
18. Repeat exercise 16, with squares of order 8.
19. For each of the following block designs, determine if the design is a BIBD and if so compute its parameters  $b, v, r, k$  and  $\lambda$ .
  - a) Varieties:  $\{1,2,3\}$   
Blocks:  $\{1,2\}, \{1,3\}, \{2,3\}, \{1,2,3\}$
  - b) Varieties:  $\{1,2,3,4,5\}$   
Blocks:  $\{1,2,3\}, \{2,3,4\}, \{3,4,5\}, \{1,4,5\}, \{1,2,5\}$
  - c) Varieties:  $\{1,2,3,4,5\}$   
Blocks:  $\{1,2,3,4\}, \{1,3,4,5\}, \{1,2,4,5\}, \{1,2,3,5\}, \{2,3,4,5\}$
  - d) Varieties:  $\{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9\}$   
Blocks:  $\{1,2,3\}, \{4,5,6\}, \{7,8,9\}, \{1,4,7\}, \{2,5,8\}, \{3,6,9\}, \{1,5,9\}, \{2,6,7\}, \{3,4,8\}, \{1,6,8\}, \{2,4,9\}, \{3,5,7\}$
20. Find an incidence matrix for each design from exercise 17.
21. If a BIBD has parameters  $v = 15, k = 10$  and  $\lambda = 9$ , find  $b$  and  $r$ .
22. If a BIBD has parameters  $v = 47 = b$  and  $r = 23$ , find  $k$  and  $\lambda$ .
23. If a BIBD has parameters  $b = 14, k = 3$  and  $\lambda = 2$ , find  $v$  and  $r$ .
24. Show that there is no  $(7,5,4,3,2)$ –BIBD.
25. Show that there is no  $(22,22,7,7,1)$ –BIBD.
26. For a Steiner triple system with  $v = 9$ , find  $b$  and  $r$ .

27. The following nine blocks form part of a Steiner triple system on  $\{a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i\}$ :  
 $\{a, b, c\}, \{d, e, f\}, \{g, h, i\}, \{a, d, g\}, \{c, e, h\}, \{b, f, i\}, \{a, e, i\}, \{c, f, g\}, \{b, d, h\}$   
 Add the remaining blocks to complete the design.
28. Four of the blocks of a symmetric  $(7,3,1)$  –design are  $\{1,2,3\}, \{2,4,6\}, \{3,4,5\}, \{3,6,7\}$ .  
 Find the remaining blocks.
29. Find a  $(11,5,2)$  –difference set in  $\mathbb{Z}_{11}$  under addition. Display the table of differences.
30. Find a  $(13,4,1)$  –difference set in  $\mathbb{Z}_{13}$  under addition. Display the table of differences.
31. Find a  $(21,5,1)$  –difference set in  $\mathbb{Z}_{21}$  under addition. Display the table of differences.
32. Find a  $(16,6,2)$  –difference set in  $\mathbb{Z}_2^4$  under addition. Display the table of differences.
33. Use your answer from exercise 32 to construct a  $16 \times 16$  matrix,  $H$ , whose entries are all  $\pm 1$ , and for which  $H = H^T$ , and  $H^2 = 16I_{16}$ .
34. If  $\alpha$  is the primitive root of  $\mathbb{F}_9 = \mathbb{Z}_3[x]/\langle x^2 + 2x + 2 \rangle$ , find all points on the line  
 $\alpha x + \alpha^3 y = \alpha^7$  in  $EG(2,9)$ .
35. Find the point of intersection of the lines  $2x + y = 5$  and  $3x + 4y = 6$  in  $EG(2,7)$ .
36. For the geometry  $EG(2,4)$  find equations for every line and determine which points are incident with each line.

## Chapter Summary/Key Takeaways

There are finite fields of order  $p^k$  for every prime  $p$  and every positive integer  $k$ . In these fields addition is modulo  $p$ . The multiplicative group of any finite field is cyclic – which allows us to use Napier's tricks to perform multiplication in a finite field. This does require a table giving the exponential and corresponding polynomial form for each nonzero field element.

Finite fields can be used to construct a complete set of mutually orthogonal Latin squares of order  $p^k$  for every prime  $p$  and every positive integer  $k$ . There are many open problems for Latin squares whose orders are not prime powers.

Balanced Incomplete Block Designs can be used for the design of experiments. They have more freedom in their parameters. Necessary conditions allow us to prove that certain designs cannot exist. There are constructions for certain classes of designs.

## Chapter Six: Introductory Coding Theory

Our goal in this chapter is to introduce the rudiments of coding theory. The purpose of coding theory is reliable and efficient communication of information. Applications include minimization of noise on CD recordings, data transfer between computers, transmission of information via phone line, radio signal etc. All of the applications have in common that there is a medium, called the channel through which the information is sent. Disturbances, called noise, may cause what is received to differ from what was sent. Noise may be caused by sunspots, lightning, meteor showers, random radio interference (dissonant waves), poor typing, poor hearing etc.

The classic diagram for coding theory is

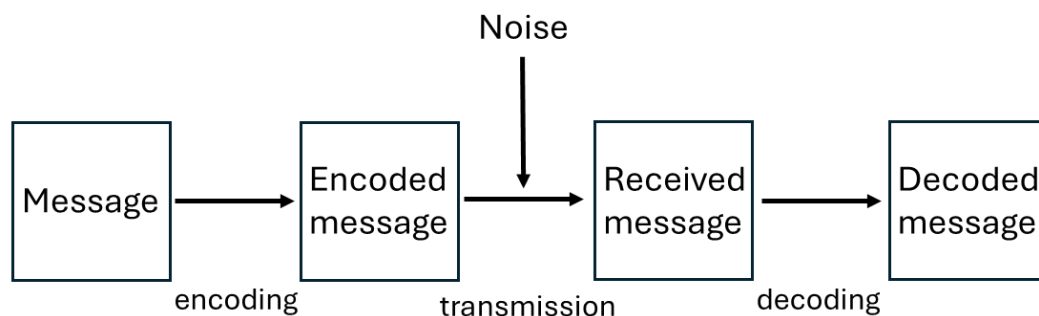


Figure 6.1: The Diagram for Coding Theory

If there were no noise, there would be no need for the theory. Engineering tactics and/or choice of channel may be able to combat certain types of noise. For any remaining noise we'll need coding theory.

Specifically, we want a scheme which

1. allows fast encoding of information.
2. allows for easy transmission.
3. allows fast decoding.
4. allows us to detect and correct any errors caused by noise.
5. has maximal transfer of information per unit time interval.

## Section 1: The Model for a Binary Symmetric Channel

Humans have built-in decoding. We can determine from context and proximity where an error has occurred and correct the mistake with very high reliability.

We won't assume that any of our schemes are going to be able to correct syntactic errors, or even to correct errors based on context. We shall concentrate on trying to correct errors only by using proximity. That is, if we know that an error has occurred in transmission, we will conclude that the most likely message sent is the one which is closest to the message received.

In general, we will need two alphabets  $A$ , and  $B$ . The alphabet  $A$  is used to construct messages to be input into the encoder. The alphabet  $B$  is used to write the encoded message – the outputs from the encoder. For this course we will take  $A = B = \{0,1\}$ , and we call our scheme a binary code. The generalizations to non-binary codes we leave to later courses.

A message will simply be a string over  $A = \{0,1\}$ . We will generally be considering what are called block codes. For block codes messages are formatted into blocks each of which have the same length. Similarly, all images under encoding will customarily have the same length.

Historically this was not the case. The most noteworthy example of a binary code which is not a block code is Morse code.  $A$  is the set of lowercase English letters,  $B = \{ \cdot, - \}$ . The letter  $a$  is encoded as  $\cdot -$ , while the letter  $e$  is encoded as  $\cdot$ ,  $sos$  is encoded  $\cdots - - - \cdots$  and so on.

For a binary, block code we will take message blocks to be elements of  $\{0,1\}^k$  for some positive integer  $k$ . Meanwhile the encoded message blocks will be elements of  $\{0,1\}^n$ . A code  $C$  is simply the set of words in  $\{0,1\}^n$  which are images of elements of  $\{0,1\}^k$  under encoding. We want to recapture the original message after decoding. So, if we think of encoding as a function  $E: \{0,1\}^k \rightarrow \{0,1\}^n$ , then the decoding function  $D: C = im(E) \rightarrow A^k$  will be  $E$ 's inverse function. Thus  $E$  will need to be one-to-one (and onto  $im(E)$ ). Therefore, we will need  $k \leq n$ .

We also need to make some assumptions about the channel. First, we assume that no information is lost - if a message of  $m$  symbols is sent, then  $m$  symbols are received. Second, we assume that noise is randomly distributed – as opposed to occurring in clumps (this type of noise is known as a burst errors). More specifically, the probability of any message symbol being affected by noise is the same for each symbol, regardless of its position in the message. Also, what happens to one symbol is independent of what happens to symbols nearby.

For our binary channel we will further assume symmetry. If  $p$  is the probability of a 1 being sent and a 1 being received, then symmetry means that  $p$  is also the probability of a 0 being sent and a 0 being received. The diagram in Figure 6.2 synthesizes our assumptions. A binary channel for which the diagram is a model is called a binary symmetric channel (BSC).

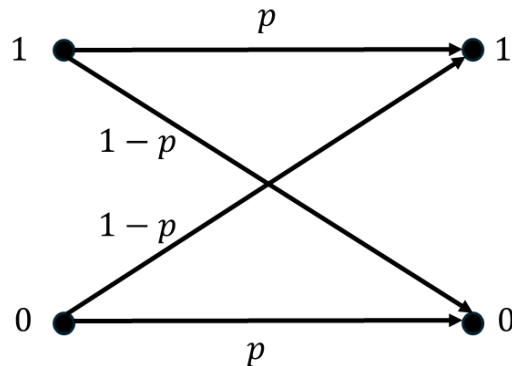


Figure 6.2: The Diagram for a Binary Symmetric Channel

The quantity  $p$  for a BSC is called the reliability of the channel. A BSC with  $p = 1$  is perfect. (Contact the author if you find one.) A BSC with  $p = 0$  can be turned into one with  $p = 1$  simply by toggling the bits prior to transmission. Similarly, any BSC with  $0 < p < 1/2$  can be turned into a BSC with  $1/2 < p' = 1 - p < 1$  via the same trick. A BSC with  $p = 1/2$  would have value as a random number generator (also let me know if you find one of these) but would not be very valuable as a channel for communication. Henceforth we assume that  $1/2 < p < 1$ .

## Section 2: Distance, Error Detection and Error Correction

Suppose that a codeword  $c$  is sent, and the word  $r$  is received. For the receiving person to detect an error, it is necessary that the received word is not a codeword. If it is a codeword, they won't realize anything is wrong. Therefore, the image  $C$  of  $\{0,1\}^k$  under the encoding function  $E$  needs to be a proper subset of  $\{0,1\}^n$ .

Example: The trivial code  $C_0$  has  $A = B = \{0,1\}$ ,  $n = k$  and  $E = 1_A$  the identity function on  $\{0,1\}^k$ . The code  $C$  is not capable of detecting any error that occurs. If the code cannot detect an error, it certainly is incapable of correcting any error.

Example: Let  $A = B = \{0,1\}$ ,  $k = 1$ ,  $n = 3$  and  $E(0) = 000$ , with  $E(1) = 111$ . So the set of codewords is  $C = \{000, 111\}$ . If no more than two errors occur in transmitting a single word, then we can always detect this, since three errors are required to change 000 into 111 and vice versa. We therefore call  $C$  a 2-error detecting code.  $C$  is also a 1-error correcting code, since if we suppose that no more than one error occurs, any received word is either a codeword, or is uniquely the cause of a single error affecting one of our two codewords. This ability comes at the price that our rate of information is essentially  $1/3$ , 1 bit of information being conveyed for every 3 bits sent.



The essential property of the code in the last example which allows it to detect and correct errors is distance. Given two vectors in  $\{0,1\}^m$  their Hamming distance is the number of positions where they differ. The distance  $\delta$  of a code  $C$  is the minimum distance among all distinct pairs of codewords. Notice that for binary codes the Hamming distance  $d(x, y)$  is the number of 1's in the string  $x + y$  where addition is component-wise mod 2. The number of 1's in a binary string  $z$  is called its weight and is denoted by  $wt(z)$ . So  $d(x, y) = wt(x + y)$  for a binary code.

If we now further assume that the probability of fewer errors occurring is higher than the probability of a large number of errors occurring, then we arrive at the principle of Maximum Likelihood Decoding: Suppose that a word  $r$  is received and it is detected that  $r$  is not a codeword. In case there is a unique codeword  $c$  that is closest to  $r$  (the Hamming distance from  $r$  to  $c$  is minimum), decode  $r$  as  $c$ .

Example: Let  $A = B = \{0,1\}$ ,  $k = 1$ ,  $n = 3$  and  $E(0) = 000$ , with  $E(1) = 111$ . So, the set of codewords is  $C = \{000, 111\}$ . This code has distance 3 since 000 and 111 differ in all three positions. We write  $d(000, 111) = 3$ . We also write  $d(C) = 3$ .

**Theorem 6.1:** *Let  $C$  be a binary code. Let  $\delta = \min_{v \neq w} d(v, w)$  as  $v$  and  $w$  range over  $C$ . Then  $C$  can detect up to  $\delta - 1$  errors, but there is a way that  $\delta$  errors can occur which cannot be detected.*

More importantly,

**Theorem 6.2:** *If  $C$  is a code with distance  $\delta$  and  $t = \lfloor (\delta/2) - 1 \rfloor$ , then  $C$  can correct up to  $t$  errors by using Maximum Likelihood Decoding, but there is a way  $t + 1$  errors can occur which cannot be corrected.*

Naturally the probability of errors occurring comes into play in our discussion (as does our assumption about the distribution of errors). From the binomial theorem we have the following corollary.

**Theorem 6.3:** *In a BSC with reliability  $p$ , the probability that exactly  $r$  errors will occur in transmitting a bit string of length  $n$  is given by  $C(n, r)(1 - p)^r p^{n-r}$ .*

Example: When  $n = 7$  and  $p = 0.99$  the probability that exactly one error occurs is

$$\binom{7}{1} (0.01)^1 (0.99)^6 \approx 0.0659036.$$

The probability that no error occurs is

$$\binom{7}{0} (0.01)^0 (0.99)^7 \approx 0.9320653.$$

The probability that exactly two errors occur is

$$\binom{7}{2} (0.01)^2 (0.99)^5 \approx 0.0019971.$$

So, the probability that more than two errors occur is about 0.00003397.

Example: If  $n = 11$ ,  $p = 1 - 10^{-8}$  and the rate of transmission is  $10^7$  digits/second the probability that a word of length  $n = 11$  is transmitted incorrectly is about  $11p^{10}(1 - p)$ . Since  $10^7/11$  words are transmitted each second, we can expect

$$\frac{11}{10^8} \cdot \frac{10^7}{11} \approx 0.1$$

words/second to be transmitted incorrectly, which translates into 8640 words transmitted incorrectly each day.

If we add a single parity check digit at the end of each word, to make the weight of each word even, then the probability of at least 2 errors occurring in a codeword is

$$1 - p^{12} - 12p^{11}(1 - p) \approx \frac{66}{10^{16}}.$$

Now we find that we can expect to wait about 2000 days before more than two errors occur in a single codeword.

R.W. Hamming was one of the original contributors to coding theory. Among other things he is credited with the following bound on the size of a code given its minimum distance.

**Theorem 6.4:** (Hamming Bound) *If  $C$  is a binary code of length  $n$  and distance  $\delta$ , then*

$$|C| \leq \frac{2^n}{\binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{t}},$$

where  $t = \lceil (\delta/2) - 1 \rceil$ .

Proof: Let  $s \in C$ . Denote by  $B_r(s)$  those bit strings of length  $n$  which have Hamming distance exactly  $r$  from  $s$ . Note that  $|B_r(s)| = C(n, r)$  since we simply choose the  $r$  positions from  $s$  to change.

Now denote by  $B'_m(s)$  the set of bit strings of length  $n$  which are at distance at most  $m$  from  $s$  (inclusive). Now  $|B'_m(s)| = C(n, 0) + C(n, 1) + \cdots + C(n, m)$ .

If  $t = \lceil (\delta/2) - 1 \rceil$ , then  $B'_t(s_1) \cap B'_t(s_2) = \emptyset$  for all  $s_1, s_2 \in C$ . Thus, any bit string of length  $n$  is in at most one set  $B'_t(s)$ . Therefore

$$|C||B'_t(s)| = \sum_{s \in C} |B'_t(s)| \leq \left| \bigcup_{s \in C} B'_t(s) \right| \leq 2^n. \blacksquare$$

### Section 3: Linear Codes

Most coding schemes in use are linear. To say that a binary code  $C$  is linear means that if  $x, y \in C$ , then  $x + y \in C$  (using component-wise mod 2 addition). So, a linear binary code is a  $k$ -dimensional subspace of  $\mathbb{Z}_2^n$ . Thus, there is a set of codewords  $\{b_1, b_2, \dots, b_k\}$  (a basis), so that every codeword  $c \in C$  is (uniquely) a linear combination of the basis vectors, that is when  $c \in C$ ,  $c = \alpha_1 b_1 + \alpha_2 b_2 + \cdots + \alpha_k b_k$  where the coefficients  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k \in \{0, 1\}$ .

Notice, that every linear binary code contains the all 0's word since if  $c \in C$ ,  $c + c = \mathbf{0}_n \in C$ . Also notice that the minimum distance in a linear code coincides with the minimum weight taken over all non-zero code words. This is true because  $d(x, y) = wt(x + y)$ , and for a linear code  $x + y$  is always a code word when  $x$  and  $y$  are.

The  $k \times n$  matrix  $M$  whose rows are  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_k$  is a generating matrix for  $C$ . In general, any matrix whose rows form a basis for  $C$  is a generating matrix for  $C$ . Most linear codes have a generating matrix which takes a standard form. The generating matrix for a linear code  $C$  in standard form consists of a  $k \times k$  identity matrix appended with a  $k \times (n - k)$  matrix  $G$ . A generating matrix in standard form for a linear code  $C$ , if it exists, can be constructed by putting any other generating matrix for  $C$  in row reduced echelon form.

For a binary linear code  $C$ , encoding is accomplished by vector-matrix multiplication. If we have a message word  $v \in \{0,1\}^k$ , then  $E(v) = vM$ , where  $M$  is a generating matrix for  $C$ , and all arithmetic is performed mod 2. If  $M$  is in standard form  $E(v) = (v|vG)$ . In this case the information bits of a word are preserved in the first  $k$  bits of the code word. Thus, if no errors occur decoding amounts to stripping off the first  $k$  bits of every codeword received. Life is more interesting when errors do occur.

To detect whether errors have occurred we use what's called a parity check matrix. A parity check matrix for a binary linear code  $C$  of dimension  $k$  and length  $n$ , is an  $(n - k) \times n$  matrix  $H$ , so that  $cH = \mathbf{0}_k$ , for all  $c \in C$ .

If we label the entries of a binary vector  $x \in \{0,1\}^n$  as  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ , then the condition  $xH = \mathbf{0}_k$  is equivalent to a set of  $n - k$  equations that the coordinates  $x_i$  must satisfy. These are called the parity check equations of the code.

Luckily when  $C$  has a generating matrix  $M$  in standard form, it also has a parity check matrix in standard form, namely  $H$  has the form

$$H = \begin{bmatrix} G \\ I_{n-k} \end{bmatrix}$$

where  $I_{n-k}$  is the  $(n - k) \times (n - k)$  identity matrix. This works modulo 2 since

$$MH = G + G = \mathbf{0}_{k,n-k}$$

In general, this is true because  $bH = \mathbf{0}_k$  for every vector  $b$  in a basis for  $C$ . Which means  $cH = \mathbf{0}_k$  for all  $c \in C$  since matrix multiplication is linear, and every codeword is a linear combination of basis vectors.

When  $C$  has a parity check matrix  $H$  in standard form we can also standardize the parity check equations by solving for the last  $n - k$  components of its column in terms of the first  $k$  components.

Example: If  $C$  has generating matrix

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

then

$$G = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

We may let

$$H = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

So, the parity check equations are

$$\begin{aligned} x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_3 + x_4 + x_6 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_2 + x_4 + x_7 &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Which are equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} x_5 &= x_2 + x_3 + x_4 \\ x_6 &= x_1 + x_3 + x_4 \\ x_7 &= x_1 + x_2 + x_4. \end{aligned}$$

If the likelihood of multiple errors per codeword is low enough, then MLD can be performed by using the parity check matrix when we employ a linear code.

We start with a linear binary code with minimum distance of at least three and a generating matrix  $M$  in standard form. we assume that either no errors occur in transmitting a single codeword, or one error occurs when transmitting a codeword. In other words, at most one error occurs per codeword. This is a relatively safe assumption if the reliability of our channel is high enough.

Suppose that a word  $v$  is encoded as  $c = vM = (v|vG)$  and the word  $r$  is received. If no error occurs  $rH = \mathbf{0}_k$  and we simply decode by taking the first  $k$  bits of  $r$ . If one error has occurred in the  $i$ th position, then  $r = c + e_i$ , where  $e_i$  is the bit string of length  $n$  with a 1 in the  $i$ th position and zeroes everywhere else. Now

$$rH = (c + e_i)H = cH + e_iH = e_iH$$

must then be the  $i$ th column of  $H$ . Thus, we can identify the location  $i$  of the error from  $rH$ . We toggle this bit and decode as if no error had occurred.

Notice that this only corrects single errors, and heavily relies on the reliability of the channel. To correct more errors, requires more intricate procedures, but utilizes similar thinking.

## Chapter 6 Exercises

- In each case find the Hamming distance between  $x$  and  $y$ .
  - $x = 1110010, y = 0101010$
  - $x = 10001000, y = 10100101$
  - $x = 111111000, y = 001001001$
  - $x = 111000111000, y = 101010101010$
- For each of the following codes  $C$ , find the number of errors that could be detected, and the number of errors that could be corrected using maximum-likelihood decoding.
  - $C = \{0000000, 1111110, 1010100, 0101010\}$
  - $C = \{0000000, 1111111, 1111000, 0000111\}$
  - $C = \{00011, 00101, 01001, 10001, 00110, 01010, 10010, 01100, 10100, 11000\}$
- Find an upper bound on the number of codewords in a code where each codeword has length 8 and the minimum distance of the code is 5.
- Let  $C$  be a binary code where every codeword has even weight. Prove that the minimum distance of the code is an even number.
- In each case  $C$  is a linear code with the given generating matrix. Encode each message word.
  - $M = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$       i)  $v = 11$       ii)  $v = 10$
  - $M = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$       i)  $v = 111$       ii)  $v = 100$
  - $M = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$       i)  $v = 1110$       ii)  $v = 1010$
- Find the linear code generated by  $M$  for parts a)-c) from exercise 5.
- Find the minimum distance for each of the following linear codes.
  - $C = \{000000, 001001, 010010, 100100, 011011, 101101, 110110, 111111\}$
  - $C = \{000000000, 111111111, 111100000, 000011111, 101010101, 010101010\}$
  - $C = \{11111111, 10101010, 11001100, 10011001, 11110000, 10100101, 11000011, 10010110, 00000000, 01010101, 00110011, 01100110, 00001111, 01011010, 00111100, 01101001\}$
- Find the standard parity check matrix for each part of exercise 6.
- Find the standard parity check equations for each part of exercise 8.
- If  $C$  is a linear code with standard parity check matrix

$$H = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

find a generating matrix for  $C$  in standard form.

11. Assume that relatively few errors occur and that  $r = 101001$  is received using the code generated by the matrix from exercise 6 b). What is the most likely codeword sent?
12. Repeat exercise 11 with  $r = 001001$ .
13. Suppose we are using the code generated by  $M$  from exercise 6c) and  $r = 1110110$  is received. Determine whether an error occurred in transmission, and if so determine the most likely codeword transmitted.
14. Repeat exercise 13 with  $r = 1010011$ .

## Appendices

### I. Structure in Cyclic Groups

Throughout this appendix let  $G$  be a finite group, written multiplicatively, and let  $e$  denote the identity element of  $G$ . If  $a \in G$ ,  $o(a) = |\langle a \rangle|$  divides  $|G|$  by Theorem 4.9. Especially if  $b \in \langle a \rangle$ , then  $o(b) | o(a)$ . Also  $b = a^i$ , for some  $0 \leq i < o(a)$ . There are two other theorems from chapter 5, which we now state and prove about groups, written multiplicatively.

**Lemma I.1:** (Forward implication of Theorem 5.2) *If  $b^j = e$ , then  $o(b)$  divides  $j$ .*

Proof: Let  $k = o(b)$ , so  $b^k = e$  and  $k$  is the least positive integer with this property. Write  $j = ql + r$  with  $0 \leq r < k$ . If

$$e = b^j = b^{\{ql+r\}} = b^{\{ql\}}b^r = (b^l)^{qb^r} = e^{qb^r} = b^r,$$

then  $r = 0$  or we reach a contradiction to the minimality of  $k$ . ■

**Theorem I.2:** (Lemma 5.18) *For  $a \in G$  and an integer  $i$ ,  $o(a^i) = o(a) / \gcd(i, o(a))$ .*

Proof: Put  $d = \gcd(i, o(a))$  and  $k = o(a)$ . Write  $k = db$  and  $i = dc$ , where  $b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Notice that  $\gcd(b, c) = 1$  and that  $b = k/d = o(a) / \gcd(i, o(a))$ .

Now  $(a^i)^b = (a^{dc})^b = (a^{db})^c = (a^k)^c = e^c = e$ . So  $o(a^i) | b$ .

On the other hand  $e = (a^i)^{o(a^i)} = a^{i \cdot o(a^i)}$ , so  $k | i \cdot o(a^i)$ . That is  $db | dc \cdot o(a^i)$ .

Thus  $b | c \cdot o(a^i)$ . Since  $\gcd(b, c) = 1$ , we conclude  $b | o(a^i)$ . ■

So, the theorems that we proved about the multiplicative groups of finite fields are true in a greater sense than we stated in Chapter 5. For finite cyclic groups we could continue this process. For example,

**Theorem I.3:** *If  $G = \langle a \rangle$  is a finite group and  $b = a^i \in G$ , then  $G = \langle b \rangle$  if and only if  $\gcd(i, o(a)) = 1$ .*

An abstract algebra course would continue this process as well as providing general theorems for rings and fields.

## II. Some Linear Algebra

One way to describe a field is as an algebraic object in which we can perform all of the standard arithmetic operations of subtraction, addition, multiplication, and division (except by 0).

One way to define a (finite dimensional) vector space is as the collection of ordered  $n$  –tuples whose entries lie in a field, and for which we define addition component-wise, and scalar multiplication by multiplying each component by the scalar. This will be sufficient for our purposes.

We call our generic field  $\mathbb{F}$  and denote its elements by lowercase Greek letters. A vector  $x = \langle x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \rangle \in \mathbb{F}^n$  has components  $x_i$  and is usually denoted as a row vector, as opposed to a column vector. To rephrase the second paragraph of this appendix: for  $x, y \in \mathbb{F}^n$  and  $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}$

$$x + y = \langle x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \rangle + \langle y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n \rangle = \langle x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2, \dots, x_n + y_n \rangle \text{ and}$$

$$\alpha x = \alpha \langle x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \rangle = \langle \alpha x_1, \alpha x_2, \dots, \alpha x_n \rangle.$$

For two vectors  $x$  and  $y$  of the same length their dot product is

$$x \cdot y = x_1 \cdot y_1 + x_2 \cdot y_2 + \dots + x_n \cdot y_n.$$

We abuse notation and allow ourselves to compute the dot product of a row vector and a column vector. The result is a scalar (meaning a field element).

An  $m \times n$  matrix – an array with  $m$  rows and  $n$  columns – whose entries are in  $\mathbb{F}$  is literally a pregnant vector. The transpose of an  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  is the  $n \times m$  matrix  $A^T$  whose  $j, i$ th entry is the  $i, j$ th entry of  $A$ .

For matrices  $A$  and  $B$  with entries in  $\mathbb{F}$  matrix multiplication,  $AB$ , is defined whenever the length of the rows of  $A$  coincides with the length of the columns of  $B$ . The  $i, j$ th entry of  $AB$  is the dot product of the  $i$ th row of  $A$  with the  $j$ th column of  $B$ .

A linear combination of a set of vectors  $S = \{a, b, c, \dots, e\}$  is any vector of the form

$$\alpha a + \beta b + \gamma c + \dots + \epsilon e.$$

The span of a set of vectors is the set of all possible linear combinations of those vectors. The span of the empty set is taken to be the zero vector  $\mathbf{0}_n = \langle 0, 0, \dots, 0 \rangle$ .

A set  $S = \{a, b, c, \dots, e\}$  of vectors is linearly dependent if there exist scalars  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \dots, \epsilon$ , not all zero, so that  $\alpha a + \beta b + \dots + \epsilon e = \mathbf{0}$ .



A set  $S = \{a, b, c, \dots, e\}$  of vectors is linearly independent if it is not linearly dependent. Thus  $S$  is linearly independent means if  $\alpha a + \beta b + \dots + \epsilon e = \mathbf{0}$ , then  $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = \dots = \epsilon = 0$ .

Notice that every superset of a linearly dependent set of vectors is linearly dependent, and that every subset of a linearly independent set of vectors is linearly independent.

A subset of a vector space which is closed with respect to vector addition and scalar multiplication is called a subspace (it can be viewed as a vector space in its own right after making suitable adjustments in notation if necessary).

A linearly independent subset  $S$  of a vector space whose span includes every vector in the vector space is called a basis. Equivalently (for our purposes) a basis is a maximally sized linearly independent set. Every basis for a vector space has the same cardinality called the dimension of the space.

The standard basis for  $\mathbb{F}^n$  is  $e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n$ , where  $e_i$  is the vector which has a one in the  $i$ th position and zeroes everywhere else. Notice that the dimension of  $\mathbb{F}^n$  is  $n$ . This is often the most convenient basis to use computationally. However, when  $q = p^n$  and we construct the finite field  $\mathbb{F}_q$  by  $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]/\langle f(x) \rangle$  for a monic irreducible polynomial  $f$  of degree  $n$ , the basis of choice for the vector space  $\mathbb{F}_q$  is  $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^{n-1}\}$ .

Let  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m \in \mathbb{F}$  and also the coefficients  $\alpha_{i,j}$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq m$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq n$ . A system of linear equations in the unknowns  $z_1, z_2, \dots, z_n$  of the form

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha_{1,1}z_1 + \alpha_{1,2}z_2 + \dots + \alpha_{1,n}z_n &= \beta_1 \\ \alpha_{2,1}z_1 + \alpha_{2,2}z_2 + \dots + \alpha_{2,n}z_n &= \beta_2 \\ &\vdots \\ \alpha_{m,1}z_1 + \alpha_{m,2}z_2 + \dots + \alpha_{m,n}z_n &= \beta_m\end{aligned}$$

is equivalent to the system obtained by 1) swapping the order of two equations, 2) multiplying any equation by a nonzero field element, or 3) adding a multiple of one equation to another equation.

The system above can be written using matrices and vectors in the form  $Az = b$ , where the  $i, j$ th entry of  $A$  is  $\alpha_{i,j}$ , the column vector  $z = \langle z_1, z_2, \dots, z_n \rangle^T$  and  $b = \langle \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m \rangle^T$ . Gauss realized that instead of manipulating the equations as above, one could just as well manipulate the matrix entries. Given an  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  the basic row operations are 1) swap two rows, 2) multiply any row by a nonzero scalar and 3) add a multiple of one row to another. Often the use of row operations is row reduction. Row reduction seeks to simplify (and hopefully solve) the underlying system of linear equations. If we enter a matrix into Mathematica, we can get the software to do row reduction for us (see Appendix III).

A matrix is in reduced echelon form if 1) all zero rows are below any non-zero rows, and 2) the left-most entry in a row is a 1 (called the leading 1), and 3) the leading 1 in each row is strictly to the right of any leading one from a row above the given row. The rank is the number of leading ones.

To test whether a set of vectors is linearly dependent or linearly independent we place them in a matrix as column vectors, and row reduce. The rank of the corresponding matrix is the number of linearly independent column vectors, which is the number of linearly independent row vectors = the dimension of the vector subspace spanned by the set of vectors.

### III. Handy Mathematica Commands

#### A. Pólya Counting

When we have the cycle index of a permutation group, we can enter it into Mathematica as a function which we can evaluate and manipulate to more easily compute pattern inventories via weight functions.

Example: The cycle index of the symmetric group on 4 letters acting on the six edges of  $K_4$  is

$$P_{S_4}[x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4] = \frac{1}{24} [x_1^6 + 6x_2x_4 + 8x_3^2 + 9x_1^2x_2^2]$$

In Mathematica we could enter

$$\text{EdgeK4}[w\_ , x\_ , y\_ , z\_ ] := \frac{1}{24} (w^6 + 6xz + 8y^2 + 9w^2x^2);$$

The `_`'s after `x,y,z` and `w` let Mathematica know that these are being declared as variables. After defining this function if we enter `EdgeK4[2,2,2,2]` the output would be the number of ways of coloring the edges of  $K_4$  using two colors (such as there and not there).

When we give weights 1 for not there, and  $x$  for there, and then we input the command `EdgeK4[1 + x, 1 + x^2, 1 + x^3, 1 + x^4]` followed by `Expand[%]`, the result is the pattern inventory by number of edges in the graph which gives an enumeration of isomorphism classes of simple graphs on four vertices.

Another useful command is one such as `Sum[Coefficient[%, xi], {i, 3, 6}]`. This command sums the coefficients of  $x^3$  through  $x^6$  in the previous output.

#### B. Finite Fields

To factor a polynomial  $p(x)$  modulo an integer  $m$  we use `Factor[p(x), Modulus->m]`. Of course we would probably prefer to define the function `g[x_]=x^81-x;` and then

`Factor[g[x],Modulus -> 3]`. This would allow us to find all monic irreducible quartics mod 3. This might be used to build  $\mathbb{F}_{81}$ .

To work in  $\mathbb{F}_{81}$  we need commands such as

`Reddus[expr_] := PolynomialMod[PolynomialMod[expr, m/.x -> \alpha], p]`

`Add[f_ , g_] := Reddus[f +g]` and `Mult[f_ , g_] := Reddus[f g];`

To determine if (mod 3) a monic irreducible quartic is primitive we would set say  $p=3; m=x^4+2x+2$ ; and then generate the powers of a root of  $m$ , to see if it's order was 80 or not.

`nonzero = Column[Table[{a^i,Reddus[a^i]},{i,0,80}]]`

This correspondence table allows us to do computations in the field more efficiently.

### C. Matrices

A matrix can be entered into Mathematica as a list of lists, or vector of vectors.

Example: `A:={ {1,0,0,0,1,1,1},{0,1,0,0,0,1,1},{0,0,1,0,1,0,1},{0,0,0,1,1,1,0} }`;

enters the generating matrix for a Hamming code of length 7.

Matrix multiplication is denoted by “.”. If  $A$  and  $B$  are appropriately sized matrices their product is  $A.B$ . This works for matrix-vector multiplication as well.

Output can be seen in matrix form using the command `MatrixForm[A.B]`.

Other useful commands are `Transpose[M]`, `Inverse[A]`, `RowReduce[M]` and

`RowReduce[M, Modulus ->2]`.

## Index

This index is color-coded. Items from chapter one are in **dark green**. Chapter two items are in **lilac**. Chapter three items are in **dark blue**. Chapter four items are in **brick red**. Chapter five items are in **gold**. Chapter six items are in black.

Abelian	65
Ackermann's Function	47
addition principle	4
adjacency matrix (graph)	19
adjacency-preserving property	22
adjacent (vertices)	19
associative, for a binary operation	77
balanced	92
binary operation	64
binary symmetric channel	106
Binomial Theorem (basic)	6
Binomial Theorem (Newton)	39
block code	105
block design	92
bridge	24
cancellation property	65
channel	104
characteristic of a field	82
characteristic polynomial	45
characteristic root	45
chromatic number	28
chromatic polynomial	28
circuit	23
coloring	28
coloring	70
coloring, proper	28
commutative ring	78
commutative, for a binary operation	77
component	24
complete set of MOLS	89
congruence modulo a polynomial	84
conjugacy class	68
cutvertex	24
cycle	23
cycle decomposition	71
cycle index	71

degree (in-degree and out-degree)	20
degree (vertex)	20
degree of a polynomial	83
degree sequence	22
difference set	96
Dirac's Theorem for Hamiltonian Graphs	25
disjoint, permutations	65
distance, of a code	107
distributive	77
divides	84
Donut shoppe problem	9
Donut shoppe problem, more realistic	10
Donut shoppe problem, real	10
edge-deleted subgraph	28
equivalence class	63
equivalence relation	63
Eulerian cycle	24
Eulerian graph	24
Eulerian path	24
Euler's Theorem for Eulerian Graphs	25
exclusion principle	4
Fermat's Larger Theorem	85
Fermat's Little Theorem	79
field	78
forcing term	52
Fundamental Reduction Theorem for Graph Coloring	29
$G$ acts on $S$	67
generating function, exponential	40
generating function, ordinary	36
generating matrix	109
graph	19
graph contracted by an edge	28
graph isomorphism	22
graph, bipartite	21
graph, complement	21
graph, complete	21
graph, complete bipartite	21
graph, connected	24
graph, cube	21
graph, cycle	21
graph, distance	24

graph, induced subgraph	21
graph, link	21
graph, wheel	21
graphs, isomorphic	21
group	64
Hamiltonian cycle	24
Hamiltonian path	24
Hamming bound	108
Hamming distance	107
Hand-Shaking Theorem	20
homogeneous coordinates	99
identity, with respect to a binary operation	77
incidence matrix (design)	93
incidence matrix (graph)	19
incident (vertex and edge)	19
Inclusion/Exclusion Theorem	7
incomplete	92
index, of a subgroup	68
invariant	69
inverse, with respect to a binary operation	77
irreducible	84
Lagrange's Theorem for Groups	68
Latin square	88
left coset	68
length, of a cycle	65
linear code	108
message	105
monic	83
multiplication principle	3
multiplier, of a difference set	97
mutually orthogonal Latin squares	88
neighbors	19
noise	104
normal subgroup	68
normalization, of Latin squares	89
orbit	68
order, of a group	65
order of an integer mod $n$	79
order, of a difference set	97
order, of a symmetric design	95
orthogonal Latin square	88

parity check equations	109
parity check matrix	109
partial fraction expansion	49
partition, of a set	63
partition, of an integer	13
Pascal's Identity	5
path	23
perfect, binary symmetric channel	106
permutation group	65
Petersen's Graph	23
Polya's Theorem (Version 1)	71
Polya's Theorem (Version 2)	72
Prime Power Conjecture	91
primitive polynomial	85
primitive root for a prime	80
Primitive Root Theorem for General Finite Fields	85
Primitive Root Theorem for Primes	82
primitive root, general	85
principle of inclusion/exclusion (basic)	3
r-combination	4
reciprocal polynomial	87
reciprocal polynomials	50
recurrence relation	42
recurrence relation, degree	42
recurrence relation, homogeneous	42
recurrence relation, initial conditions	42
recurrence relation, linear with constant coefficients	42
recurrence relation, nonhomogeneous	42
reflexive	63
reliability	106
resolvable	98
root of a polynomial	84
r-permutation	4
r-string	4
splits	84
stabilizer	68
stabilizes	69
standard form, generating matrix	109
standard form, Latin squares	89
Steiner triple system	95
Stirling numbers of the second kind	12

subgroup	66
Subgroup Criterion Theorem	66
Subgroup Criterion for Finite Sets	66
symmetric	63
symmetric design	95
symmetric group	65
The Fundamental Lemma	69
transitive	63
transitive, group action	68
translate, of a difference set	96
tree	26
tree, ancestors	27
tree, binary	27
tree, children	26
tree, descendants	27
tree, grandchildren	26
tree, height	27
tree, internal vertex	27
tree, leaf	27
tree, m-ary	27
tree, m-ary full	27
tree, rooted	26
tree, subtree rooted at w	27
triple system	95
type, of a permutation	67
value of a polynomial	84
Vandermonde's Identity	15
weight function	72
Wilson's Theorem	79



## Bibliography

1. Beth, Thomas, Jungnickel, Dieter, Lenz, Hanfried (1999) *Design Theory*, Volume I, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, New York, NY, Cambridge University Press.
2. Beth, Thomas, Jungnickel, Dieter, Lenz, Hanfried (1999) *Design Theory*, Volume II, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, New York, NY, Cambridge University Press.
3. Gauss, Carl Friedrich (1966) *Disquisitiones Arithmeticae*, English Edition, New York, NY, Yale University Press.
4. Hall, Marshall Jr. (1986) *Combinatorial Theory*, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, New York, NY, John Wiley and Sons.
5. MacWilliams, F.J., Sloane, N.J.A. (1977) *The Theory of Error-Correcting Codes*, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, Elsevier Science B.V..
6. Roberts, Fred S. (1984) *Applied Combinatorics*, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, Prentice Hall.
7. Thompson, Thomas (1983) *From Error-Correcting Codes Through Sphere Packings to Simple Groups*, The Mathematical Association of America.
8. Wilf, Herbert S. (1990) *generatingfunctionology*, New York, NY, CRC Press.

## Acknowledgments

Along with the dedicatees I need to thank some people. If your name doesn't appear here, it doesn't mean I shouldn't have thanked you. It just means that I failed to recall with sufficient force how much you helped me.

First, my paternal grandparents Ray and Marion Iiams. You were my parents for a year and my grandparents for a lifetime.

Second, my parents William and Ann Iiams. Enough said.

Third, I need to thank "The Boss", my wife, the former Michele Svacina. You have often dragged me kicking and screaming into a better life.

Fourth, my favorite sister (by default) Lisa Ramirez. You put up with me even though you thought I was too smart for my own good.

My children Rachel and Jacob. I am so fortunate to have been your father.

Chuck Seale, Alvis Amble and Christopher Werkeley – collectively you helped me grow up. Many who met these men belong here too. There are too many of you to list – so you will remain anonymous. What matters is that you know who you are.

The professoriate in the Department of Mathematics at Colorado State University between 1985 and 1993. Special thanks to Bernhard Levinger, Dick Painter, Jaak Vilms and Bob Liebler.

Jim Davis and Ken Smith – you both helped get my career off the ground and were awesome role models.

The professoriate in the Department of Mathematics and Statistics at the University of North Dakota. Special thanks to Dave Uherka, Richard Millspaugh and Bruce Dearden. Very special thanks to Jerry Metzger, partly because he would have hated being acknowledged, but mostly for being the co-author of our Magnum Opus.